MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 28

The Lament for the Nibelungs

Diu Klage · Der Rosengarte

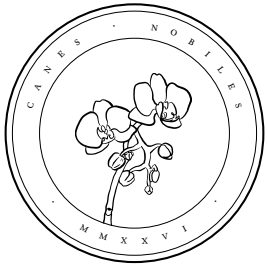
The Lament for the Nibelungs

With the Rose Garden at Worms

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

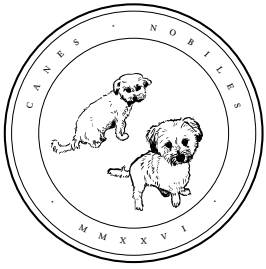


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 28 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Diu Klage mit den Lesarten sämmtlicher Handschriften, herausgegeben von Karl Bartsch (Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus, 1875); Die Gedichte vom Rosengarten zu Worms, herausgegeben von Georg Holz, text A (Halle: Max Niemeyer, 1893)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The Klage's verses are numbered as Bartsch numbers them, every fifth verse in the outer margin, and its paragraphs are his; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's. The Rosengarten is Holz's text A, its strophes numbered as he numbers them, his eighteen sections and his square brackets kept; a row of points is his mark for a lost line.

CONTENTS

DIU KLAGE

I · The Tale and Its Cause 9
II · How the Slaughter Came 23
III · Gernot, Rüedeger, and Kriemhild 37
IV · Etzel's Lament 46
V · Kriemhild, Ortlieb, and Bloedelin 57
VI · Dietrich's Grief and Irinc's Body 73
VII · Hagen and Volker 87
VIII · The Burgundian Dead and Dietrich's Men 97
IX · Wolfhart 108
X · Giselher, Gernot, and Rüedeger 121
XI · The Lament for Rüedeger 133
XII · The Mourning Women and the Burials 146
XIII · The Common Grave and Etzel's Despair 159
XIV · The Messengers Set Out 174
XV · The Messengers at Bechelaren 186
XVI · The Truth Told at Bechelaren 201

DIU KLAGE

(continued)

XVII · Bishop Pilgrim 217
XVIII · The News at Worms 231
XIX · Swemmel's Account 246
XX · Rumold's Counsel and Dietrich's Departure 261
XXI · Bechelaren and the Book 273

DER ROSENGARTE

I · Kriemhild's Challenge 285
II · Choosing the Twelve 312
III · The Monk Ilsan 323
IV · Arrival at Worms 334
V · Wolfhart and Pusold 342
VI · Sigestap and Ortwin 346
VII · Heime and Schrutan 349
VIII · Witege and Asprian 352
IX · Ilsan and Studenfuchs 359
X · Dietleib and Walther 364
XI · Volker and Ortwin 369
XII · Eckehart and Hagen 372
XIII · Helmschrot and Gernot 375
XIV · Amelolt and Gunther 377
XV · Hildebrand and Gibich 380
XVI · Dietrich and Siegfried 384
XVII · Ilsan's Fifty-Two 399
XVIII · Ilsan's Return to the Cloister 402

Diu Klage

The Lament

The poet opens a tale fit only for lamenting: the Burgundians, children of Dancrat and Uote, and their sister Kriemhild, whose first husband died through his own pride and who then married Etzel, king of the Huns. Grieving for Siegfried, she bent her power to vengeance, which a woman could not take with her own hands; the poet holds her blameless, since she acted from faithfulness. Her brothers crossed the Rhine to Etzel's feast, cursed forever learning of her gold, and Etzel welcomed them, but Kriemhild would not let his service be fulfilled.

Hie hevet sich ein mære,
Here raises itself a tale,

daz wær vil redebære
that were very worth-telling

und wære ouch guot ze sagene,
and were also good to tell,

niwan daz ez ze klagene
except that it to lament

den liuten allen gezimt.
to-the people all befits.

swer iz rehte vernimt,
whoever it rightly hears,

der muoz iz jâmerlîche klagen
he must it piteously lament

und jâmer in dem herzen tragen.
and sorrow in the heart carry.

hete ich nu die sinne,
had I now the wits,

daz siz gar ze minne
that they-it wholly to love

heten diez erfunden!
had who-it devised!

ez ist von alten stunden
it is from old hours

her vil wærlîch gesaget.
hither very truly told.

ob ez iemen missehaget,
if it anyone displeases,

der sol iz lâzen âne haz
he shall it leave without hate

und hœr die rede fürebaz.
and hear the discourse further.

Ditze alte mære
This old tale

bat ein tihtære
bade a poet

an ein buoch schrîben.
in a book write.

des enkundez niht belîben,
of-that could-it not stay-undone,

ez ensî ouch noch dâ von bekant,
unless-it be also still there of known,

wie die von Burgonden lant
how those of Burgundy land

bî ir zîten und bî ir tagen
in their times and in their days

mit êren heten sich betragen.
with honors had themselves conducted.

Dancrât ein künec hiez,
Dancrat a king was-called,

der in diu wîten lant liez,
who to-them the wide lands left,

den stolzen helden guoten,
to-the proud heroes good,

und ouch der edelen Uoten,
and also to-the noble Uote,

diu dâ krône mit im truoc.
who there crown with him bore.

si heten alles des genuoc
they had of-all that enough

daz rîche künege solden
which rich kings should

haben oder wolden.
have or would.

Si heten ouch âne wân
They had also without doubt

eine swester wol getân.
a sister well made.

diu nam sider einen man:
who took afterward a husband:

dâ von sich prüeven began
there from itself to-arise began

vil maneges guoten recken nôt,
very many-a good warrior's need,

unt daz er selbe den tôt
and that he himself the death

gewan von sîner übermuot.
got from his arrogance.

sît nam se ab einen helt guot
afterward took she again a hero good

ûz hiunischem rîche,
out-of Hunnish realm,

mit dem si hêrlîche
with whom she lordly

nâch ir jâmer sît gesaz.
after her sorrow afterward sat.

der rede meister hiez daz
the discourse's master bade that

tihten an dem mære,
compose in the tale,

wie rîch der künec wære.
how rich the king were.

diu rede ist gnuoc wizzenlîch.
the discourse is enough known.

er het aller tägelîch
he had all daily

zwelf künige under im.
twelve kings under him.

von der wârheit ich daz nim.
from the truth I that take.

er pflac vil grôzer êren.
he kept very great honors.

man gevriesch nie man sô hêren
one heard-of never man so lordly

under heiden und under kristen.
among heathens and among Christians.

genuoge, die daz wisten,
enough, who that knew,

die riten zuo zim in daz lant.
who rode thither to-him into the land.

er was Etzel genant.
he was Etzel named.

Botelunc sîn vater hiez,
Botelung his father was-called,

der im vil gewaltes liez
who to-him much power left

nâch sînem tôde unz an die stunt.
after his death until to the hour.

daz mære tuot uns von im kunt
the tale makes to-us of him known

daz er het ze wîbe ein wîp,
that he had as woman a woman,

daz tugentlîcher vrouwen lîp
that more-virtuous lady's person

bî ir jâren niemen vant.
in her years no-one found.

Helche sô was si genant.
Helche so was she named.

von der schiet er sich mit nôt:
from her parted he himself with need:

der vil gewaltige tôt
the very mighty death

der nam im sîne wünne.
it took from-him his joy.

sît riet im sîn künne
afterward counseled him his kin

an vroun Kriemhilden,
to lady Kriemhild,

die edelen unt die milden.
the noble and the generous.

Iu ist wol geseit daz
To-you is well said that

wie si zen Hiunen gesaz
how she among-the Huns sat

alsô diu edele Helche ê.
as the noble Helche before.

doch tet ir zallen zîten wê
yet did to-her at-all times woe

daz si dâ ellende hiez,
that she there in-exile was-called,

wand si der jâmer niht enliez
for her the sorrow not let

geruowen selten keinen tac,
rest ever any day,

wand ir an dem herzen lac
for to-her at the heart lay

wie si verlôs ir wünne.
how she lost her joy.

ir aller næhstez künne
her of-all nearest kin

het ir ir lieben man benomen.
had from-her her dear husband taken.

dô was ez an die rede komen
then was it to the talk come

daz vroun Uoten kinde
that lady Uote's child

allez daz gesinde
all the household

dient in Hiunen rîchen,
served in Huns' realm,

unt alsô vorhtlîchen
and so fearfully

sam si vroun Helchen tâten ê.
as they lady Helche did before.

si het ouch dâ vrouwen michel mê
she had also there ladies much more

danne in ir vater lande.
than in her father's land.

der guoten wîgande
of-the good fighters

hete si vil grôze kraft,
had she very great host,

tägelîche ritterschaft
daily knightly-play

die ir ougen sâhen.
which her eyes saw.

daz enkunde niht vervâhen,
that could not avail,

ir enweinten âne lougen
to-her but-wept without denial

alle zît ir ougen.
all time her eyes.

Sît dô brâhte siz dar an,
Later then brought she-it there to,

do si den gewalt gar gewan,
when she the power wholly won,

daz si ân undersprâche
that she without dispute

ir gedâht einer râche
for-herself thought-of a vengeance

umbe Sîfride ir lieben man,
for Siegfried her dear husband,

dem vil übel an gewan
from-whom very evilly on won

ir bruoder Gunther den lîp
her brother Gunther the life

und Hagene unt des küneges wîp,
and Hagen and the king's woman,

von dem er doch den tôt genam.
from whom he yet the death took.

dem helde sterben niht gezam
to-the hero dying not befitted

von deheines recken hant,
from any warrior's hand,

wand er het wol elliu lant
for he had well all lands

mit sîner kraft verkêret.
with his strength overturned.

dâ von was ir gesêret
there from was to-her wounded

beidiu herze und ouch der muot.
both heart and also the spirit.

ez dûhte si vil selten guot
it seemed to-her very seldom good

swaz iemen vreude kunde pflegen.
whatever anyone joy could keep.

si hetes alles sich bewegen.
she had-of-it all herself given-up.

Swie dicke zietwederre hant
However often on-either hand

gekrœnte künege bî ir vant
crowned kings by her found

Kriemhilt diu hêre
Kriembild the lordly

zehene unde mêre,
ten and more,

daz was ir allez ein wint.
that was to-her all a wind.

si het daz Sigemundes kint
she had the Siegmund's child

brâht mit dienste dar zuo
brought with service there to

daz si spât unde fruo
that she late and early

gedâht an Sigelinde,
thought of Sieglind,

wie sie mit ir kinde
how she with her child

het vröude unde wünne.
had joy and bliss.

ez enkunde ir beider künne
it could of-them both kin

den willen nie erwenden,
the will never turn,

sine hete mit ir henden,
but-she had with her hands,

ob si möhte sîn ein man,
if she might be a man,

ir schaden, als ich mich verstân,
her harm, as I myself understand,

errochen manege stunde.
avenged many-a hour.

geschehen ez nine kunde,
happen it not could,

wand si hete vrouwen lîp.
for she had woman's person.

ez hete daz jâmerhafte wîp
it had the sorrowful woman

den willen in ir muote.
the will in her spirit.

daz enkom den niht ze guote,
that came to-those not to good,

von den si den schaden nam;
from whom she the harm took;

wand ez ir rechen gezam.
for it to-her to-avenge befitted.

Des ensol si niemen schelten.
For-that shall her no-one rebuke.

sold er des engelten,
should he for-that pay,

der rehter triuwen kunde phlegen,
who right faith could keep,

der hete schiere sich bewegen
he had quickly himself given-up

daz er mit rehten dingen
that he with right things

möhte niht volbringen
might not accomplish

dehein getriulîchen muot.
any faithful spirit.

triuwe diu ist dar zuo guot:
faith it is there for good:

diu machet werden mannes lîp,
it makes worthy man's person,

und êrt ouh alsô schoeniu wîp
and honors also so fair women

daz ir zuht noch ir muot
that their courtesy nor their spirit

nâch schanden nimmer niht getuot:
after shames never at-all does:

als vroun Kriemhilde geschach,
as to-lady Kriemhild happened,

der von schulden nie gesprach
of-whom by right never spoke

misselîche dechein man.
ill any man.

swer ditze mære merken kan,
whoever this tale mark can,

der sagt unschuldic gar ir lîp,
he says guiltless wholly her person,

wan daz daz vil edel werde wîp
except that the very noble worthy woman

tæte nâch ir triuwe
did after her faith

ir râche in grôzer riuwe.
her vengeance in great grief.

Iu ist daz dicke wol gesagt
To-you is that often well said

wie Etzel hête bejagt
how Etzel had won

fürsten lobelîche
princes praiseworthily

heim in sîniu rîche
home into his realms

durch eine grôze wirtschaft,
for a great feast,

da er mit sîner helde kraft
where he with his heroes' host

wolde bezeigen sînen prîs.
would show his renown.

dô was vrou Kriemhilt sô wîs,
then was lady Kriemhild so wise,

daz siz alsô ane vie
that she-it so on took

daz si der deheinen blîben lie
that she of-them none remain let

die si dâ gerne sæhe.
whom she there gladly should-see.

wenne daz geschæhe
when that should-happen

oder wie vil der wîle wære,
or how much of-the while were,

jâne weiz ich niht der mære,
yea know I not the tidings,

oder wie si kœmen in daz lant,
or how they came into the land,

die dâ hête besant
whom there had summoned

Etzel der vil rîche.
Etzel the very rich.

sô rehte hêrlîche
so rightly lordly

kômen die herren über Rîn.
came the lords over Rhine.

daz muost in grôzer schade sîn
that must to-them great harm be

an mannen und an mâgen.
in men and in kinsmen.

des endorfte niht betrâgen
of-that needed not weary

Kriemhilt die rîchen,
Kriembild the rich,

daz si sô lobelîchen
that they so praiseworthily

zen Hiunen komen wâren;
among-the Huns come were;

dâ von dô gebâren
there from then behave

nâch vreuden sold ir der muot.
after joys should to-her the spirit.

sô wol gezogenen helt guot
so well bred hero good

man sô manegen nie bevant,
one so many-a never found,

als ûz Burgonden lant
as out-of Burgundy land

het gefüeret Gunther
had brought Gunther

und ouch sîn bruoder Gîselher
and also his brother Giselher

und ouch der herre Gêrnôt.
and also the lord Gernot.

daz Kriemhilde golt rôt
that Kriemhild's gold red

heten si ze Rîne lâzen.
had they at Rhine left.

diu wîle sî verwâzen,
the while be cursed,

daz sis ie gewunnen künde.
that they-it ever gained knowledge.

ich wæn si ir alten sünde
I suppose they their old sins

engulten, und niht mêre.
paid-for, and not more.

Der wol gelobte hêre
The well praised lordly-one

kom vrœlîch zin gegangen,
came gladly to-them walking,

von dem si wol enpfangen
by whom they well received

wurden in sînem rîche,
were in his realm,

der in vil friuntlîche
who to-them very friendly

sînen dienest gehiez,
his service promised,

den in leisten niht volliez
which to-them perform not let-complete

Kriemhilt diu edele künegîn.
Kriemhild the noble queen.

daz müeze got geklaget sîn
that may God lamented be

daz si die helde ie gesach;
that she the heroes ever saw;

dâ von vil leide geschach
there from much grief happened

maneger muoter kinde.
to-many-a mother's child.

daz Etzeln ingesinde
that Etzel's household

sich vreute gegen in sêre:
itself rejoiced toward them greatly:

si wânden daz ir êre
they supposed that their honor

nu hôhe wære erstanden,
now high were risen,

diu sider in den landen
which afterward in the lands

vil harte jæmerlîch gelac.
very wholly piteously lay.

in was ir urteiles tac
to-them was their judgment's day

komen nu ze nâhen.
come now too near.

die si dâ gerne sâhen,
whom they there gladly saw,

daz was iedoch ein grôziu nôt
that was yet a great need

daz si von den gelâgen tôt.
that they from them lay dead.

Etzel would gladly have served his guests, but Hagen had so wronged Kriemhild that she must have vengeance; she meant only his life to be lost, but his lords would not let him be slain, and forty thousand died before he fell. Etzel was never told the truth, which might easily have averted it. The poet names the slain: Dietrich's six hundred, Bloedelin's three thousand, the knights of Duke Herman of Poland, Sigeher of Wallachia, and Walber from Turkey, and the outlaws Irnfrid, Hawart, and Irinc, killed by Volker, Dankwart, and Hagen.

Swie gerne in gedienet hæte
However gladly them served would-have

und ez vil gerne tæte
and it very gladly would-do

Ezel der künec rîche,
Etzel the king rich,

dem ouch si pillîche
to-whom also they rightly

dienest solden bringen,
service should bring,

dô muose in misselingen
then must to-them fail

von einen alten sculden.
from an old guilt.

ez hete wider ir hulden
it had against her favor

geworben alsô sêre
striven so sorely

Hagen der übermüete hêre,
Hagen the arrogant lordly-one,

daz siz lâzen niht enkunde,
that she-it leave not could,

sine müeste bî der stunde
but-she must at the hour

rechen allez daz ir was;
avenge all that hers was;

dâ von vil wênic der genas
there from very few of-them survived

die dâ wâfen mohten tragen.
who there weapons could bear.

ê Hagen eine wurde erslagen,
before Hagen alone was slain,

ê sturben wol vierzec tûsent man.
before died well forty thousand men.

swie gern in gesceiden het her dan
however gladly them parted had hence away

Kriemhilt diu künegîn,
Kriemhild the queen,

des enkund et niht gesîn.
that could just not be.

dô lie siz gên als iz mohte,
then let she-it go as it might,

wan ir niht anders tohte.
for to-her nothing else availed.

daz kom von krankem sinne.
that came from weak sense.

der tôt het ir minne,
the death had their love,

die dâ sterben solden,
who there die should,

die doch vreude haben wolden
who yet joy have would

ob siz geleben kunden.
if they-it live-to-see could.

dô het ouch in den stunden
then had also in the hours

den sic sô verre genomen
the victory so far taken

der rât der dâ was bekomen
the counsel which there was come

von Kriemhilde munde,
from Kriemhild's mouth,

daz si sich zuo der stunde
that they themselves at the hour

niht kunden scheiden her dan;
not could part hence away;

dâ von dô Etzel gewan
there from then Etzel won

die aller grœzesten nôt
the all greatest need

die ein künec âne tôt
which a king without death

ie gewan an sînem lîbe.
ever won on his person.

daz kom von sînem wîbe.
that came from his woman.

Diu enhetes niht alsô gedâht.
She had-it not so intended.

si het iz gerne dar zuo brâht,
she had it gladly there to brought,

dô siz prüeven began,
when she-it to-plan began,

daz niwan der eine man
that only the one man

den lîp hête verlorn.
the life had lost.

sô wære ir swære und ir zorn
so were her heaviness and her anger

dâ mit gar verswunden:
there with wholly vanished:

son wære ouch zuo den stunden
so were also at the hours

dâ niemen arges niht getân.
there no-one evil at-all done.

done wolden in niht slahen lân
then would him not slay let

sîn herren, mit den er dar was komen.
his lords, with whom he there was come.

des wart in allen samt benomen
of-that was from-them all together taken

daz leben ze den zîten,
the life at the times,

dô si begunden strîten,
when they began to-fight,

den kunden mit den gesten,
the known with the guests,

den bœsen sam den besten,
the bad as the best,

den kristen zuo den heiden,
the Christians with the heathens,

den lieben zuo den leiden,
the dear with the loathed,

den herren sam den knehten.
the lords as the servants.

si begunden alle vehten,
they began all to-fight,

die verren unt die nâhen,
the far and the near,

do si vor in ligen sâhen
when they before them lie saw

ieslîcher sînen friunt tôt.
each his friend dead.

diz was doch allez âne nôt:
this was yet all without need:

man möht ez lîhte erwendet hân.
one might it easily averted have.

der Etzeln hete kunt getân
who to-Etzel had known made

von êrste diu rehten mære,
from first the right tidings,

sô het er die starken swære
so had he the strong heaviness

harte lîhteclîch erwant.
very easily averted.

die von Burgonden lant
those of Burgundy land

liezenz durch ir übermuot.
let-it for their arrogance.

dô het ouch Kriemhilt behuot
then had also Kriemhild guarded

mit listeclîchem sinne,
with cunning sense,

daz ers niht wart inne:
that he-of-it not became aware:

des wart im dô der schade bekant,
of-that was to-him then the harm known,

den er sît nimmer überwant.
which he afterward never overcame.

Diz hiez man allez schrîben,
This bade one all write,

und waz ir von den lîben
and what of-them from the bodies

würde dâ gescheiden,
would-be there parted,

unt wie in begunde leiden
and how to-them began to-grieve

vor jâmer daz leben allen.
for sorrow the life to-all.

jâ muosen si der gallen
yea must they the gall

und ouch ir herzen volgen:
and also their heart follow:

si wurden starke erbolgen
they were strongly enraged

den stolzen Rînfranken;
at-the proud Rhine-Franks;

als ob ins solde danken
as if them-for-it should thank

Etzel der künec mære,
Etzel the king famed,

ob ez sîn wille wære:
if it his will were:

dô was ez dem künege leit.
then was it to-the king grievous.

ez was in allen bereit
it was to-them all ready

ûf einen veiclîchen tac.
on a doomed day.

swie wol ir der wirt phlac,
however well of-them the host took-care,

daz enkunde niht vervâhen.
that could not avail.

die in dâ sâzen nâhen
those-who to-them there sat near

und vrœlîch bî in giengen
and gladly by them went

und si ê wol enpfiengen,
and them before well received,

die lâgen sider mit in tôt.
they lay afterward with them dead.

daz was ein nôt vor aller nôt.
that was a need before all need.

Für wunder sol manz immer sagen
For wonder shall one-it ever tell

daz sô vil helede wart erslagen
that so many heroes were slain

von eines wîbes zorne.
from a woman's anger.

die recken ûz erkorne,
the warriors out chosen,

die ie wârn vil werlîch,
who ever were very warlike,

die der herre Dietrîch
whom the lord Dietrich

mit im brâht in daz lant,
with him brought into the land,

und der küene Hildebrant,
and the bold Hildebrand,

der sturben sehs hundert dâ.
of-them died six hundred there.

swie hêrlîch si anderswâ
however lordly they elsewhere

in volkes stürmen herten
in folk's assaults hard

sich dicke wol erwerten,
themselves often well defended,

beide dise unde die,
both these and those,

des genuzzen si vil lützel hie.
of-that profited they very little here.

dâ flôs der herre Blœdelîn
there lost the lord Bloedelin

der hœhsten unt der besten sîn
of-the highest and the best his

drîzec hundert sîner man.
thirty hundred of-his men.

er viengez bôslîchen an
he began-it wickedly on

durh eines wîbes lêre.
through a woman's teaching.

sîn lîp und ouch sîn êre
his body and also his honor

in den triuwen wart verlorn.
in the faith was lost.

diu im ze vrouwen was gesworn,
which to-him for lady was sworn,

der dient er nâh ir hulde,
to-her served he after her favor,

alsô daz er der schulde
so that he of-the guilt

alrêrste muoste wesen pfant,
all-first must be pledge,

wan die von Burgonden lant
for those of Burgundy land

sich werten alsô sêre
themselves defended so sorely

daz mans in giht für êre.
that one-it to-them avows for honor.

Der herzoge Herman,
The duke Herman,

ein fürste ûzer Pœlân,
a prince out-of Poland,

und Sigeher von Walâchen,
and Sigeher of Wallachia,

vil willeclîche râchen
very willingly avenged

der edeln Kriemhilde leit.
the noble Kriemhild's grief.

zwei tûsent ritter gemeit
two thousand knights gay

si brâhten zuo der wirtschaft,
they brought to the feast,

die von der edelen geste kraft
who by the noble guests' might

sît alle wurden verswant.
afterward all were vanished.

dar het durh kriechischiu lant
thither had through Greek lands

brâht ûz Türkîe
brought out-of Turkey

Walber der edelvrîe
Walber the noble-free

zwelf hundert sîner man:
twelve hundred of-his men:

die muosen alle dâ bestân,
who must all there remain,

swaz ir von Kriechen was bekomen,
whatever of-them from Greeks was come,

und swaz die heten dâ genomen
and whatever those had there taken

des Kriemhilde goldes
of-the Kriemhild's gold

und Etzelen soldes:
and of-Etzel's pay:

den dienten si vil swinde.
for-that served they very swiftly.

von ir vil maneges kinde
from them very many-a child

wart sît geweinet sêre.
was afterward wept sorely.

si wânden werben êre,
they supposed to-win honor,

und wurben niht wan den tôt:
and won nothing but the death:

diu vil scedelîchiu nôt
the very harmful need

het den sic an in genomen.
had the victory on them taken.

die ûf genâde wâren komen
who upon favor were come

Etzeln dem rîchen,
to-Etzel the rich,

die dienten angestlîchen.
who served fearfully.

Der wil ich iu nennen drî,
Of-them will I to-you name three,

daz elliu lant des wâren vrî
that all lands of-it were free

daz iht küeners drinne wære,
that anything bolder therein were,

danne Irnfrit der mære
than Irnfrid the famed

und Hâwart und Îrinc.
and Hawart and Irinc.

den recken wâren iriu dinc
to-the warriors were their affairs

von grôzen schulden alsô komen
from great guilts so come

daz si ins rîches æhte waren komen.
that they into-the realm's han were come.

doch wart des dicke sît gedâht
yet was of-it often afterward thought

daz man si gerne hete brâht
that one them gladly had brought

von Rôme zuo des keisers hulden:
from Rome to the emperor's favor:

doch belibens in den schulden
yet remained-they in the guilts

unz an ir lîbes ende.
until to their life's end.

si het mit gebender hende
them had with giving hand

Etzel vil wol brâht dar zuo
Etzel very well brought there to

daz si nu spâte unde fruo
that they now late and early

tâten swaz er wolde.
did whatever he would.

dô man rechen solde
when one avenge should

der scœnen Kriemhilde leit,
the fair Kriemhild's grief,

des wârn si willec und bereit.
of-that were they willing and ready.

Man sagt als ichz hân vernomen,
One says as I-it have heard,

von wannen si dar wâren komen.
from where they thither were come.

Irnfrit der helt ûz erkant
Irnfrid the hero out known

der het gerûmet Dürengen lant,
he had left Thuringia land,

da er ê lantgrâve hiez.
where he before landgrave was-called.

do in der keiser dâ verstiez,
when him the emperor there banished,

Hâwart der helt starke
Hawart the hero strong

was voget in Tenemarke.
was lord in Denmark.

Îrinc der degen ûz erkorn
Irinc the thane out chosen

was von Lutringe erborn
was of Lorraine born

und was ein starc küene man:
and was a strong bold man:

mit grôzer gâbe im an gewan
with great gift from-him on won

Hâwart daz er wart sîn man.
Hawart that he became his man.

sus ist daz mære uns komen an.
thus is the tale to-us come on.

si heten ûz gesundert
they had out separated

driu unt drîzec hundert
three and thirty hundred

si brâhten mit in in daz lant.
they brought with them into the land.

der wart von Volkêres hant
of-them was by Volker's hand

sô maneger in dem sturme erslagen,
so many-a-one in the assault slain,

daz manz immer wol mac sagen.
that one-it ever well may tell.

Ouch sluoc der helt mære,
Also slew the hero famed,

der spæhe videlære,
the cunning fiddler,

Irnfride den rîchen
Irnfrid the rich

in sturme hêrlîchen.
in assault lordly.

dô sluoc von Tronege der helt
then slew of Troneg the hero

den küenen und den ûzerwelt,
the bold and the out-chosen,

von Luthringe Îringen,
of Lorraine Irinc,

der hete des gedingen
he had of-it hope

daz iemen küener solte leben.
that anyone bolder should live.

doch het im vollen lôn gegeben
yet had to-him full reward given

den er dâ wolde slahen tôt,
whom he there would slay dead,

Hagene, der sît in der nôt
Hagen, who afterward in the need

bestuont unz hin zem lesten
stood until thither to-the last

bî den werden gesten.
by the worthy guests.

Hâwarten den sluoc Dancwart,
Hawart him slew Dankwart,

des ellen selten was gespart
whose valor seldom was spared

in deheiner slahte nôt.
in any kind need.

mich wundert des daz in der tôt
me wonders of-it that him the death

ie getorste bestân:
ever dared to-attack:

wand er hete dâ getân
for he had there done

daz man daz sagt ze mære,
that one that tells for tale,

ob ez zwelven wære
if it to-twelve were

alsô küenen gescehen,
so bold happened,

daz mans für wunder müese jehen.
that one-it for wonder must avow.

Gernot's hand slew many and the margrave Rüedeger, who slew Gernot in turn; Rüedeger's five hundred all died, and Giselher, guiltless of Siegfried's death, fell with them. Gunther, who counseled Siegfried's death, never won his sister's favor, and her child was slain. When old Hildebrand struck down Kriemhild in Etzel's sight, the grief began in earnest. The poet will not say she is in hell: she died for faithfulness, and no one may judge another, since all of us need God's mercy at the last.

Von swannen si dar wâren komen,
From whence they thither were come,

swâ man si hête genomen
wherever one them had taken

mit botsceften in den landen,
with embassies in the lands,

zer Burgonden handen
at-the Burgundians' hands

wâren si alle geborn.
were they all born.

des liutes wart sô vil verlorn
of-the folk was so much lost

von der Gêrnôtes hant,
by the Gernot's hand,

daz man durh drîzec künege lant
that one through thirty kings' lands

gevriesc wol diu mære
heard-of well the tidings

welh sîn ellen wære.
what his valor were.

der sluoc ouch Rüedegêre,
he slew also Rüedeger,

den marcgrâven hêre,
the margrave lordly,

dâ si in sturme wâren.
where they in assault were.

dâ sach man sô gebâren
there saw one so behave

Rüedegêr den rîchen
Rüedeger the rich

daz er vil lobelîchen
that he very praiseworthily

den starken Gêrnôten sluoc.
the strong Gernot slew.

ir starp dâ beidenthalp genuoc
of-them died there on-both-sides enough

ir beider mâge unde man.
of-them both kinsmen and men.

fünf hundert ritter wol getân
five hundred knights well made

brâhte mit im Rüedegêr:
brought with him Rüedeger:

der lebt deheiner langer mêr;
of-them lives none longer more;

für daz si in den sturm gesprungen,
for that they into the assault sprang,

swie dicke in was gelungen
however often to-them had succeeded

bî Etzeln dem rîchen.
by Etzel the rich.

die sluogen gewalteclîchen
them slew mightily

die von Burgonden lant,
those of Burgundy land,

sô daz diu stähelîniu bant
so that the steely bands

dræten von den swerten.
whirled from the swords.

die si dâ twingen gerten,
which they there to-force desired,

die werten sich vil sêre.
they defended themselves very sorely.

Gîselher der hêre
Giselher the lordly

den heizbluotegen bach
the hot-blooded brook

ungerne vliezende sach
unwillingly flowing saw

in den selben stunden
in the same hours

von Rüedegêres wunden.
from Rüedeger's wounds.

Swaz des scaden funden wart,
Whatever of-the harm found was,

den si von der hovevart
which they from the court-journey

zen Hiunen genâmen,
among-the Huns took,

die ze Etzeln quâmen,
those-who to Etzel came,

daz was nôt über nôt
that was need over need

daz den Gîselheres tôt
that the Giselher's death

niemen kunde erwenden,
no-one could avert,

der mit râte noch mit henden
who with counsel nor with hands

nie deheine scult gewan
never any guilt had

an Sîfrit Kriemhilde man.
in Siegfried Kriemhild's husband.

man klaget ouch Gêrnôten,
one laments also Gernot,

den si dâ sâhen tôten
whom they there saw dead

von der Rüedegêres hant.
by the Rüedeger's hand.

der helt ûz Burgonden lant
the hero out-of Burgundy land

dâ vil jâmerlîche lac,
there very piteously lay,

der mit êren manegen tac
who with honors many-a day

het gelebt unz an die stunde.
had lived until to the hour.

got im niht engunde
God to-him not granted

belîben in der sculde.
to-remain in the guilt.

sîner swester hulde
of-his sister favor

kunde Gunther niht erwerben.
could Gunther not win.

jâ riet er daz ersterben
yea counseled he that to-die

Sîfrit muose, ir êrster man;
Siegfried must, her first husband;

dâ von er den haz gewan
there from he the hate won

sît von ir deste vaster.
afterward from her the faster.

beide scade und laster
both harm and shame

wurden beidiu dâ genomen.
were both there taken.

ez was ouch leider dar zuo komen
it was also alas there to come

daz ir kint was erslagen:
that her child was slain:

daz enwolden niht vertragen
that would not endure

die ez dâ rechen solden
those-who it there avenge should

und ouch dienen wolden
and also serve would

Etzeln dem rîchen.
Etzel the rich.

daz geschach vil leideclîchen.
that happened very sorrowfully.

Wie moht man des getrouwen
How might one of-that trust

daz Kriemhilt der vrouwen
that to-Kriemhild the lady

selber sterben dâ geschach?
self dying there happened?

daz leit und den ungemach
the grief and the discomfort

het gepruoft ir selber munt:
had devised her own mouth:

nu wart ir sterben mit in kunt,
now became her dying with them known,

die gerne wæren noch genesen.
who gladly were still survived.

des enmohte leider niht wesen
of-that could alas not be

daz si langer leben solden,
that they longer live should,

die dâ râchen unde wolden
those-who there avenged and would

ir selbes lîbe vogt wesen:
of-their own life guardian be:

der enkunde einer niht genesen.
of-them could one not survive.

Swaz man jâmers ê dâ vant,
Whatever one of-sorrow before there found,

dô der alte Hildebrant
when the old Hildebrand

durch sîns grimmen herzen zorn
through his grim heart's anger

sluoc die vrouwen wol geborn
slew the lady well born

dâ ez Etzel der künec sach,
where it Etzel the king saw,

dô huop sich êrste ungemach
then raised itself first discomfort

under aller der diete.
among all the people.

dem jâmer wart ze miete
to-the sorrow was for reward

sîn hœhster stuol gesetzet.
its highest seat set.

an vreuden wart geletzet
in joys was injured

dâ vil maneger vrouwen lîp:
there very many-a lady's person:

ez wære maget oder wîp,
it were maiden or woman,

den muose ir wünne entwîchen.
from-them must their joy depart.

Etzeln den künec rîchen
Etzel the king rich

sah man vil jæmerlîche stân.
saw one very piteously stand.

ez was nu allez daz getân
it was now all that done

daz dâ ze tuonne was,
which there to do was,

sît ir deheiner genas,
since of-them none survived,

die dâ wâfen torsten tragen:
who there weapons dared bear:

die lâgen alle dâ erslagen
they lay all there slain

und tôt gevallen in daz pluot.
and dead fallen into the blood.

des was beswæret in der muot,
of-that was burdened to-them the spirit,

die mit vreuden wânden leben.
who with joys supposed to-live.

die swære het in got gegeben;
the heaviness had to-them God given;

wand man dâ anders niht enpflac
for one there otherwise nothing practiced

beidiu naht unde tac
both night and day

niwan weinens unde klagen.
but weeping and lamenting.

man sol undanc der wîle sagen
one shall ill-thanks to-the while say

in der diu nôt geschæhe,
in which the need happened,

unt daz Kriemhilt ie gesæhe
and that Kriemhild ever saw

des edelen Sîfrides lîp;
the noble Siegfried's person;

dâ von vil manec schœne wîp
there from very many-a fair woman

von liebe wart gescheiden.
from love was parted.

ez wart den namen beiden,
it was to-the names both,

heiden unde kristen,
heathens and Christians,

von ir einer listen
by her one cunning

alsô leide getân,
so grievously done,

daz beidiu wîp unde man
that both women and men

gelouben wil der mære,
believe will the tale,

daz si der helle swære
that she the hell's heaviness

habe von solhen schulden,
have from such guilts,

daz si gein gotes hulden
that she toward God's favor

geworben habe sô verre,
striven have so far,

daz got unser herre
that God our lord

ir sêle niht enwolde.
her soul not would.

der daz bewæren solde,
who that prove should,

der müese zuo der helle varn:
he must to the hell fare:

daz hiez ab ich vil wol bewarn
that bade however I very well guard

daz ich nâch dem mære
that I after the tale

zer helle der bote wære.
to-the hell the messenger were.

Des buoches meister sprach daz ê:
The book's master spoke that before:

dem getriuwen tuot untriuwe wê.
to-the faithful does faithlessness woe.

sît si durch triuwe tôt gelac,
since she for faith dead lay,

in gotes hulden manegen tac
in God's favor many-a day

sol si ze himele noch geleben.
shall she in heaven yet live.

got hât uns allen daz gegeben,
God has to-us all that given,

swes lîp mit triuwen ende nimt,
whose life with faith end takes,

daz der zem himelrîche zimt.
that he to-the heaven befits.

diu wârheit uns daz kündet.
the truth to-us that proclaims.

vor got er sich versündet,
before God he himself sins,

swer dem andern durch haz
who the other through hate

verteilet. wie mag er daz
condemns. how may he that

wizzen waz got mit im getuot?
know what God with him does?

niemen dunke sich sô guot
no-one seem himself so good

und sô gar vor sünden vrî,
and so wholly of sins free,

ern bedürfe daz im got sî
but-he need that to-him God be

genædec an der lesten zît,
gracious at the last time,

sô man uns allen lôn gît.
when one us all reward gives.

IV · ETZEL'S LAMENT

The hall lies in ruins over the dead. Etzel sees nothing but streams of blood, wrings his hands, and cries out so loud that towers and palace shake, like a bison's horn; the ladies scream with him. The country people come running, to look, to lament, or to avenge their friends, and the dead are cleared from before the hall, with bloody mail drawn off their wounds. Hildebrand hears the wailing over Kriemhild, whom he slew because she killed Hagen when Dietrich had brought him bound.

Daz hûs daz lac gevallen
The house it lay fallen

ob den recken allen,
over the warriors all,

die durch strîten kômen drin.
who through fighting came therein.

dem wirte gie sîn zît hin
to-the host went his time away

mit leide und ouch mit sêre.
with grief and also with sorrow.

sîn hôhez lop und êre
his high praise and honor

wâren beide nider komen.
were both down come.

mit siuften veste het genomen
with sighs firmly had taken

in des fürsten herzen
in the prince's heart

vil jæmerlîchez smerzen.
very piteous smart.

an dem ie vil êren lac,
on whom ever much honor lay,

getrüebet wart sîn liehter tac.
troubled was his bright day.

vreude im was zerunnen.
joy to-him was melted-away.

ich wæne im sîne sunnen
I suppose to-him his suns

niht mêre schînen wolden.
not more shine would.

die vreude die dâ solden
the joy which there should

im in sînem herzen wesen,
to-him in his heart be,

der muoser âne nu genesen;
of-it must-he without now live;

wand er anders niht ensach
for he otherwise nothing saw

wan manegen bluotegen bach
but many-a bloody brook

vliezen ûz starken wunden,
flow out-of strong wounds,

die im in kurzen stunden
which from-him in short hours

vreude hêten benomen.
joy had taken.

610 ûz sînen ougen was im komen
out-of his eyes was to-him come

vil minneclîchez ane sehen:
very lovely looking on:

von des tôdes scult was daz geschehen
from the death's guilt was that happened

daz er lützel bî im vant.
that he little by him found.

er begunde houbet unde hant
he began head and hand

615 winden alsô sêre,
to-wring so sorely,

daz ez künege nie mêre
that it to-kings never more

weder sît noch ê geschach.
neither afterward nor before happened.

er hete leit und ungemach:
he had grief and discomfort:

des moht man wunder von im sehen.
of-that might one wonder from him see.

620 man muose Etzeln des jehen
one must to-Etzel of-it avow

daz alsô sêre gekleit
that so sorely lamented

würde mit der wârheit
would-be with the truth

nie mê von deheinem man.
never more by any man.

wie lûte er wüefen began!
how loudly he to-wail began!

625 sam man hôrt ein wisentes horn,
as one heard a bison's horn,

dem edelen fürsten wol geborn
to-the noble prince well born

diu stimme ûz sînem munde
the voice out-of his mouth

erdôz in der stunde,
resounded in the hour,

do er sô sêre klagete
when he so sorely lamented

daz dâ von erwagete
that there from shook

beide türne und palas.
both towers and palace.

swie lützel vreuden ê dâ was,
however little joy before there was,

ir was nu verre deste min.
of-it was now far the less.

er hete verwandelt den sin,
he had changed the sense,

daz er bî der stunde
that he at the hour

wizzen niht enkunde
know not could

ob ez im laster wære.
whether it to-him shame were.

dô half im sîne swære
then helped to-him his heaviness

vil manec rîcher weise klagen.
very many-a rich orphan lament.

welt ir nu wunder hœren sagen,
(if)-will you now wonder hear tell,

sô merket unbesceidenheit.
so mark immoderateness.

swaz ie zer werlde wart gekleit,
whatever ever in-the world was lamented,

daz was allez her ein wint.
that was all hither a wind.

sô maneger werden muoter kint
so many-a worthy mother's child

klagen nie begunde,
to-lament never began,

alsô man dâ zestunde
as one there at-the-hour

bî Etzeln weinende vant.
by Etzel weeping found.

maneger juncvrouwen hant
many-a young-lady's hand

mit winden wart zebrochen.
with wringing was broken.

da wart selten iht gesprochen
there was seldom anything spoken

niwan ach unde wê.
but ah and woe.

swie lûte ie der künec scrê,
however loudly ever the king cried,

die vrouwen schriren alle mite.
the ladies cried all with.

ez ist ouh noch der liute site,
it is also still the people's custom,

swâ einem leit ze herzen gât,
wherever to-one grief to heart goes,

daz der ander vreude bî im lât:
that the other joy by him leaves:

sam wart dâ vreude lâzen.
so was there joy left.

daz volc âne mâzen
the folk without measure

die klage ie grœzer machten.
the lament ever greater made.

diu lit vil lûte erkrachten
the joints very loudly cracked

an maneger juncvrouwen hant,
on many-a young-lady's hand,

die man vil sêre klagende vant.
whom one very sorely lamenting found.

Daz lantvolc îlende duo
The country-folk hastening then

lief allez weinende zuo,
ran all weeping to,

dô si gehôrten mære
when they heard tidings

wie ez ergangen wære,
how it gone were,

beidiu durch scouwen und durch klagen.
both for seeing and for lamenting.

sümelîche kômen durh bejagen,
some came for gain,

eteslîche durch friunde rechen.
some for friends to-avenge.

slahen unde stechen
slaying and stabbing

was dâ deheiner slahte nôt:
was there of-no kind need:

si wâren âne ir arbeit tôt,
they were without their toil dead,

die friunde mit der vînde scar.
the friends with the foes' host.

man gebôt dem volke alsô gar
one commanded to-the folk so wholly

daz si sich niht ensûmten
that they themselves not delayed

und mit den tôten rûmten.
and with the dead cleared.

eine strâze gegen dem sal
a street toward the hall

si begunden rûmen über al
they began to-clear over all

von den die man hie ûze vant,
of those whom one here outside found,

680 die diu Volkêres hant
whom the Volker's hand

und Hagene het ze tôde erslagen:
and Hagen had to death slain:

die hiez man von dem hûse tragen
them bade one from the house carry

alsô verre hin dan
so far away thence

daz ein ieslîcher man
that every single man

685 zuo dem sale möhte komen.
to the hall might come.

der tôt het in dâ benomen
the death had from-them there taken

alsô vil ir wünne,
so much of-their joy,

was ir deheines künne
was of-them any's kin

bî dem strîte gewesen,
at the battle been,

690 die noch dâ wâren genesen,
who still there were survived,

die wærn nu gerne mit in tôt.
they were now gladly with them dead.

man sach vil manegen rinc rôt
one saw very many-a ring red

ziehen ab den wunden.
draw off the wounds.

von in wart enbunden
from them was unbound

vil manec dürkel helmvaz.
very many-a pierced helmet.

rôt pluotec unde naz
red bloody and wet

sô was allez ir gewant:
so was all their clothing:

manegen hêrlîchen rant
many-a lordly shield-rim

sah man bî in verscrôten.
saw one by them hacked.

die rîchen werden tôten.
the rich worthy dead.

der wart sô vil von dan getragen,
of-them was so many from thence carried,

alle die ez hôrten sagen,
all who it heard tell,

daz si des michel wunder nam,
that them of-it great wonder took,

ob iemen vreuden iht gezam
if anyone of-joys anything befitted

in allem dem lande.
in all the land.

die guoten wîgande
the good fighters

vil wênec müete swaz man sprach.
very little troubled whatever one spoke.

vil manec magt von houbte brach
very many-a maiden from head broke

mit grôzem jâmer daz hâr.
with great sorrow the hair.

vil maneges triutinne dar
very many-a beloved thither

vil lûte scrîende gie,
very loudly crying went,

diu von wunden enpfie
who from wounds received

daz pluot an ir gêren.
the blood on her skirts.

die armen zuo den hêren
the poor with the lordly

wâren alsô gelegen
were so laid

daz der pluotige regen
that the bloody rain

si hete gemachet alle naz.
them had made all wet.

swelich wîp daz versaz,
whatever woman that neglected,

daz si den ungesunden
that she the unsound

beweinten niht ir wunden,
bewept not their wounds,

daz was unwîplîcher muot.
that was unwomanly spirit.

Hildebrant der helt guot
Hildebrand the hero good

der hôrte lûte rüefen:
he heard loudly calling:

krefteclîchen wüefen
mightily wailing

hôrt er daz gesinde.
heard he the household.

der scœnen Uoten kinde
of-the fair Uote's children

lac hie einez vor dem sal:
lay here one before the hall:

von des wunden zetal
from whose wounds down

brach dâ âne lougen
broke there without denial

vil trähene ûz scœnen ougen.
many tears out-of fair eyes.

daz was diu küneginne,
that was the queen,

die mit unsinne
who with madness

het erslagen Hildebrant,
had slain Hildebrand,

wand si von Burgonden lant
for she of Burgundy land

Hagenen ê ze tôde sluoc.
Hagen before to death slew.

des hât man immer genuoc
of-that has one ever enough

dâ von noch ze sagene,
there of still to tell,

wie daz kœm daz Hagene
how that came that Hagen

sturbe von einem wîbe,
died by a woman,

wand er mit sînem lîbe
for he with his body

sô vil wunders het getân.
so much wonder had done.

die liute redent sunder wân
the people say without doubt

noch daz ez ein lüge sî:
yet that it a lie be:

so ist daz der wârheite bî
so is that to-the truth near

daz in des twanc her Dietrîch
that him to-that forced sir Dietrich

daz der helt vil lobelîch
that the hero very praiseworthy

in sînen banden gelac:
in his bonds lay:

dô sluoc im einen swertes slac
then struck to-him a sword's blow

mit ir hant des küneges wîp.
with her hand the king's woman.

durh daz verlôs ouch si den lîp
through that lost also she the life

von Hildebrande âne nôt.
by Hildebrand without need.

man klagt der küneginne tôt
one laments the queen's death

deiswâr von allem rehte:
truly by all right:

ritter unde knehte
knights and servants

die tâtenz pillîche.
they did-it rightly.

jâmers alsô rîche
of-sorrow so rich

wurden alle die man vant
became all whom one found

über Etzelen lant.
over Etzel's land.

Dietrich comes to Kriemhild's body and laments that he must serve her now in death; her head is laid back to her body on the funeral-bier. Etzel falls on her breast and mourns his child, his wife, and his kin, and Dietrich rebukes him for grief unworthy of a wise man. The headless Ortlieb is carried to his mother, and Bloedelin's body beside them. Etzel reproaches his dead brother for provoking the guests, laments that no one told him of Kriemhild's hatred, and chides his idols, which made him forsake the Christian faith he can no longer regain.

Nu kom der herre Dietrîch
Now came the lord Dietrich

mit einem muote klägelîch
with a spirit lamentable

dâ er Kriemhilde vant.
where he Kriemhild found.

er bat die liute al zehant
he bade the people all at-once

daz si durch got ir weinen liezen.
that they for God their weeping left.

swie vil si im des gehiezen,
however much they to-him of-it promised,

idoch entâten siz niht:
yet did they-it not:

alsô grôz was diu gesciht
so great was the event

die si hêten gesehen
which they had seen

und diu dâ vor in was gescehen,
and which there before them was happened,

daz sich dâ niemen kunde
that itself there no-one could

gefreun bî der stunde.
rejoice at the hour.

dô sprach der herre Dietrîch
then spoke the lord Dietrich

«jâ hân ich fürsten mâge rîch
«yea have I princes' kin rich

vil gesehen bî mînen tagen:
many seen in my days:

ich gehôrte nie gesagen
I heard never tell

von schœnerem wîbe.
of fairer woman.

ôwê daz dînem lîbe
alas that to-thy person

der tôt sô schiere solde komen.
the death so soon should come.

swie mir dîn rât hât benomen
however from-me thy counsel has taken

mîn aller bestez künne,
my all best kin,

ich muoz mit unwünne
I must with unbliss

klagen dich unde mich.
lament thee and me.

deiswâr daz tuon ich
truly that do I

mit alsô grôzer riuwe,
with so great grief,

daz ich dich dîner triuwe
that I thee of-thy faith

niht sol lân engelten.
not shall let pay.

du hâst mir vil selten
thou hast to-me very seldom

versaget des ich dich ie gebat.
denied what I thee ever asked.

nu ist ez komen an die stat
now is it come to the place

daz ich ez, vrouwe, dienen sol.
that I it, lady, serve shall.

dâ mit enwirt mir nimmer wol,
there with becomes to-me never well,

swaz ihs nâh dînem tôde tuo.»
whatever I-of-it after thy death do.»

dô greif der ellenthafte zuo
then grasped the valiant-one to

und hiez si schiere bâren
and bade her quickly bier

die liute die dâ wâren.
the people who there were.

Do man si geleite ûf den rê,
When one her laid on the funeral-bier,

der fürste het ir houbet ê
the prince had her head before

zuo dem lîbe getragen.
to the body carried.

dô hôrt man Hildebrande klagen,
then heard one Hildebrand lament,

der si sluoc mit sîner hant.
who her slew with his hand.

dô kom ûzer Hiunen lant
then came out-of Huns' land

Etzel der jâmers rîche,
Etzel the of-sorrow rich,

dem jâmer wol gelîche
to-the sorrow well like

und als ez im dô tohte.
and as it to-him then befitted.

nieman vor jâmer mohte
no-one for sorrow might
gelâzen ern hulfe im klagen.
forbear but-he helped him lament.
undanc begunde er sagen
ill-thanks began he to-say
sînem grôzen unheile:
to-his great misfortune:
wande im was ze teile
for to-him was to share
nu worden ungelückes hort.
now become of-misfortune hoard.
diu ie unvalschiu wort
who ever unfalse words
hete bî ir lîbe,
had by her person,
sînem werden wîbe
to-his worthy woman
viel er an die bruste.
fell he on the breast.
ir wîze hende er kuste,
her white hands he kissed,
vil senelîche er klagete.
very longingly he lamented.
alrêst dem künege sagete
first to-the king told
Dietrich diu rehten mære.
Dietrich the right tidings.
«Owê mîner swære»
«Alas for-my heaviness»
sprach Etzel der wol geborn,
spoke Etzel the well born,

«wie hân ich arman verlorn
«how have I poor-man lost

beidiu mîn kint und mîn wîp?
both my child and my woman?

und dar zuo manegen werden lîp
and there to many-a worthy person

ûz mînem hôhem künne,
out-of my high kin,

und mîner ougen wünne
and my eyes' joy

an mînen konemâgen,
in my kinsmen-by-marriage,

die grôzer êren pflâgen
who great honors kept

die wîle daz si mohten leben.
the while that they might live.

wie pin ich müedinc gegeben
how am I wretch given

in alsus grôze riuwe?
into thus great grief?

het ich die ganzen triuwe
had I the whole faith

an ir vil werdem lîbe erkant,
in her very worthy person known,

ich het mit ir elliu lant
I had with her all lands

gerûmt ê ich si het verlorn.
left before I her had lost.

getriuwer wîp wart nie geborn
more-faithful woman was never born

von deheiner muoter mêre.
of any mother more.

ôwê fürsten hêre,
alas princes lordly,

Gunther unt die brüeder sîn,
Gunther and the brothers his,

und die hôhen recken mîn,
and the high warriors mine,

mîn bruoder und mîn mâge,
my brother and my kinsmen,

die mit des tôdes lâge
who with the death's snare

wunderlîche sint beslagen.
wondrously are caught.

wie kunde ich immer verklagen
how could I ever cease-lamenting

die vil guoten wîgande,
the very good fighters,

die ich von manegem lande
whom I from many-a land

zuo mîner hôhzît her gewan?
to my feast hither won?

dar zuo alle mîne man,
there to all my men,

die ich niht kan bescheiden,
whom I not can distinguish,

under kristen und under heiden,
among Christians and among heathens,

von den mîn êre ie vaste steic.»
by whom my honor ever firmly climbed.»

nâh der klage er nider seic,
after the lament he down sank,

als ob er wære entslâfen.
as if he were fallen-asleep.

dar umb begunde in strâfen
there for began him to-rebuke

von Berne her Dietrîch.
of Bern sir Dietrich.

er sprach «ir tuot dem ungelîch
he spoke «you do to-that unlike

daz ir sît ein wîse man.
that you are a wise man.

daz iuch niht vervâhen kan,
what you not avail can,

daz lât: daz ist mîn lêre.»
that leave: that is my teaching.»

«Nu ensûmet iuch niht mêre,»
«Now delay you not more,»

sprach der degen guoter,
spoke the thane good,

«traget zuo sîner muoter
«carry to his mother

mîn wênigez kindelîn.»
my little little-child.»

die boten giengen dô dar în,
the messengers went then there in,

dâ si Ortlieben funden
where they Ortlieb found

mit einer starken wunden
with a strong wound

in dem bluote ligen houbetlôs.
in the blood lie headless.

ôwê waz Etzel verlôs
alas what Etzel lost

an im der grôzen êre!
in him of-the great honor!

ez gewinnet nimmer mêre
it gains never more

nehein künec sölhe nôt.
any king such need.

an den Blœdelînes tôt
on the Bloedelin's death

der wirt ouh dô gedâhte:
the host also then thought:

er schuof daz man in brâhte
he arranged that one him brought

tôt zuo disen beiden.
dead to these both.

swie si wæren heiden,
however they were heathens,

doch was zerbarmen umbe sie.
yet was to-pity about them.

daz liut dort unde hie
the people there and here

wüefens unde schrîens pflac.
wailing and crying practiced.

vil manegen grôzen brustslac
very many-a great breast-blow

sluogen in diu werden wîp:
struck themselves the worthy women:

vil manec minneclîcher lîp
very many-a lovely person

was mit grôzen leiden
was with great griefs

von liebe gescheiden.
from love parted.

Sîns gebotes si wol gedâhten.
Of-his command they well thought.

dô si Blœdelînen brâhten
when they Bloedelin brought

da in der künec selbe sach,
where him the king himself saw,

der sun Botelunges sprach
the son of-Botelung spoke

«ôwê, lieber bruoder mîn,
«alas, dear brother mine,

mîniu lant unt diu dîn
my lands and the thine

geligent nu vil eine.
lie now very alone.

die herverte seine
the campaigns slow

sihet man in den rîchen.
sees one in the realms.

du tæte ungüetlîchen,
thou didst unkindly,

vil lieber bruoder, ane mir.
very dear brother, to me.

swie sold ich getrouwen dir
how should I trust thee

daz du mînen gesten,
that thou to-my guests,

degenen aller besten,
thanes all best,

ie erzurndest den muot,
ever angeredst the spirit,

daz si dich, mære helt guot,
that they thee, famed hero good,

dâ von ze tôde hânt erslagen?
there from to death have slain?

die selben helde muoz ich klagen,
the same heroes must I lament,

wand ich in hête gesant
for I to-them had sent

mîne boten in ir lant,
my messengers into their land,

daz si mich sehen solden.
that they me see should.

die triuwe haben wolden
who faith have would

und mir getriuwe wolden wesen,
and to-me faithful would be,

die solden si hân lân genesen
they should them have let survive

und solden si vermiten hân.
and should them avoided have.

wie solden si dô hân getân,
what should they then have done,

die vil werlîh wâren ie,
who very warlike were ever,

dô man si strîtes niht erlie,
when one them of-strife not spared,

die helde enwerten ouch sich?
the heroes unless-defended also themselves?

daz si daz verdagten mich,
that they that kept-silent from-me,

daz kom von ir übermuot.
that came from their arrogance.

ich hete daz vil wol behuot
I had that very well guarded-against

daz hie iht geschehen wære.
that here anything happened were.

ouch soldestu, helt mære,
also shouldst-thou, hero famed,

si vil pillîch hân verborn.
them very rightly have spared.

waz denne ob einen alten zorn
what then if an old anger

ûf si truoc daz edel wîp?
against them bore the noble woman?

dune soldest êre unde lîp
thou shouldst honor and life

dar umbe niht gewâget hân.
there for not risked have.

daz ir Hagene het getân,
what to-her Hagen had done,

des weste ich wol diu mære:
of-that knew I well the tidings:

swie liep si mir wære,
however dear she to-me were,

ich het in nimmer doch erslagen.
I had him never yet slain.

ob er vor mir ze tûsent tagen
if he before me for thousand days

solde hân geslâfen,
should have slept,

sone het ich mîn wâfen
so had I my weapon

nimmer über in erzogen.
never over him drawn.

bruoder, nu hât dich betrogen
brother, now has thee deceived

dîn vil tumplîcher muot.
thy very foolish spirit.

wâfen», sprach der künec guot,
alas», spoke the king good,

«daz ich ie wart geborn!
«that I ever was born!

waz ich trôstes hân verlorn
what I of-comfort have lost

an in unt an den mînen!
in them and in the mine!

Gunther mit den sînen
Gunther with the his

wære mir gestanden
were to-me stood-by

mit willigen handen
with willing hands

alles des ich wolde:
of-all that I would:

swes ein künec solde
whatever a king should

an guoten recken hân gegert,
of good warriors have desired,

des wær ich wol an in gewert.
of-that were I well in them granted.

nu enist des leider niht gescehen.
now is of-it alas not happened.

ôwê daz niemen mir verjehen
alas that no-one to-me avow

wolt der rehten mære,
would the right tidings,

daz in sô vîent wære
that to-them so hostile were

Kriemhilt ir swester.
Kriemhild their sister.

der schade und mîn laster
the harm and my shame

diu sint beidiu wol sô grôz,
they are both well so great,

swie mich ze lebene nie verdrôz,
however me to live never vexed,

nu verdriuzet mich sô sêre
now vexes me so sorely

daz ich nimmer mêre
that I never more

gerne gelebe deheinen tac:
gladly live any day:

wande ez ist der gotes slac
for it is the God's blow

über mich ergangen.
over me gone.

nu ligent si gevangen,
now lie they captured,

die sîn gewalt betwungen hât.
whom his power compelled has.

ie wold ich des haben rât
ever would I of-it have counsel

daz ich in niht ensolde
that I him not should

fürhten noch enwolde:
fear nor would:

nu scilte ich mîniu apgot,
now rebuke I my idols,

sît des gewaltegen gebot
since the mighty-one's command

gezürnet hât sô sêre.
grown-angry has so sorely.

wa ist nu diu michel êre
where is now the great honor

die Mahmet unde Machazên
which Muhammad and Machazen

sô lange liezen her gestên?
so long let hither stand?

swaz ich errîten kunde,
whatever I win-by-riding could,

daz was bî mîner stunde
that was in my hour

allez gar von mir bediet.
all wholly by me subjected.

der mir ze lebene geriet,
who to-me to life counseled,

dar zuo juden und kristen
there to Jews and Christians

mit gotlîchen listen
with godly skills

hiez erscînen den tac,
bade appear the day,

mit den sînen er mîn pflac
with the his he of-me took-care

sam ich sîn eigen wære.
as-if I his own were.

nu riet mir mîn swære,
now counseled to-me my heaviness,

ob er mîn noch ruochen wolde,
if he of-me still care would,

daz ich mich aber bekêren solde,
that I myself again convert should,

ob er mir helfen wolt dar zuo.
if he to-me help would there to.

nu fürhte ich daz ers niht entuo,
now fear I that he-it not does,

wand ich in ouch ê betrouc.
for I him also before deceived.

mîniu apgot scuofen daz ich louc
my idols caused that I lied

sîner starken gotheit,
to-his strong godhead,

daz ich lie die kristenheit.
that I left the Christendom.

daz ist âne zwîfel wâr:
that is without doubt true:

ich was kristen wol fünf jâr;
I was Christian well five years;

doch gescuofen si daz sider
yet caused they that afterward

daz ich mich vernogierte wider,
that I myself renounced again,

und wart in als ê undertân.
and became to-them as before subject.

ob ich nu gerne wolde enpfân
if I now gladly would receive

kristen leben und die rehten ê,
Christian life and the right law,

daz enwirt mir wider nimmer mê:
that becomes to-me again never more:

wand ich hân mich unervorht
for I have myself unafraid

sô sêre wider in verworht
so sorely against him forfeited

daz er mîn leider niht enwil.
that he of-me alas not will.

tûsent künege heten vil
thousand kings had much

an mîn eines swære.
in my one's heaviness.

ich wiste wol daz er wære
I knew well that he were

von dem aller hœhsten luft
from the all highest air

unz in die understen gruft
until into the lowest crypt

gewaldec swes er wolde.
mighty of-whatever he would.

dem ich dâ dienen solde,
whom I there serve should,

für den getrouwe ich nimmer komen.
before him trust I never to-come.

ditze leit hât mir benomen
this grief has from-me taken

freude und allen hôhen muot.
joy and all high spirit.

mih endiuhte nu niht sô guot
me would-seem now nothing so good

sô mit den ligenden hie der tôt.»
as with the lying-ones here the death.»

der künec ersûft: des gie im nôt.
the king sighed: of-that went to-him need.

michels lûter er erscrê.
much louder he cried.

daz tet Dietrîche wê,
that did to-Dietrich woe,

dem fürsten von Berne:
to-the prince of Bern:

er hôrt ez vil ungerne.
he heard it very unwillingly.

VI · DIETRICH'S GRIEF AND IRINC'S BODY

Dietrich and Hildebrand find Etzel; Dietrich bids him not stand wringing his hands like a timid woman, but comfort him. Etzel answers that he stands like a poor man who never held land, and Dietrich that all the men who should have helped him lie slain. Etzel has his child, his wife, and his brother borne off. Irinc is found, slain by Hagen, and Etzel and Dietrich lament him. Gunther lies headless; Dietrich tells how he bound him and gave him to Kriemhild, little thinking she would have him slain, and Etzel weeps for the guests he greeted.

Er und meister Hildebrant
He and master Hildebrand

gie dâ er den künec vant.
went where he the king found.

als er Etzeln gesach, 1015
when he Etzel saw,

dem gelîch er dô sprach
to-that like he then spoke

sam im niht arges wære.
as-if to-him nothing amiss were.

«ach wê dirre mære,
«ah woe of-these tidings,

gevreiscet man diu in daz lant,
(if)-learns one them into the land,

daz ir mit wintender hant 1020
that you with wringing hand

stêt als ein blœde wîp,
stand as a timid woman,

diu ir zuht und ir lîp
who her courtesy and her body

nâch friunden sêre hât gesent.
after friends sorely has longed.

des sîn wir von iu ungewent,
of-that are we from you unaccustomed,

daz ir unmanlîche tuot.
that you unmanly do.

nu solt ir, edel künec guot,
now shall you, noble king good,

trœsten friuntlîche
comfort friendly

mich armen Dietrîche.»
me poor Dietrich.»

er sprach «wie solde ich geben trôst?
he spoke «how should I give comfort?

jâ bin ich alles des belôst
yea am I of-all that bereft

daz ich zer werlde ie gewan,
that I in-the world ever won,

niwan daz ich den lîp noh hân
but that I the life still have

âne guote sinne.
without good senses.

mich hât mit unminne
me has with unlove

der gotes haz bestanden.
the God's hate assailed.

ich was in mînen landen
I was in my lands

gewaldec unde rîche:
mighty and rich:

nu stên ich jæmerlîche,
now stand I piteously,

reht als ein arman
right as a poor-man

der nie huobe gewan.»
who never holding won.»

Dô sprach der Bernære
Then spoke the Bernese

«her künec, lât iuwer swære,
«sir king, leave your heaviness,

und tuot dem gelîche
and do to-that like

ob ir Dietrîche
if you Dietrich

wellet helfen von der nôt.
will help from the need.

si sint mir alle erslagen tôt
they are to-me all slain dead

die mir dâ helfen solden
who me there help should

und gerne bringen wolden
and gladly bring would

wider an mîn êre.
back to my honor.

jâ riuwent si mich sêre,
yea grieve they me sorely,

die nôtgestallen mîne.
the comrades mine.

jâ maht du, künec, die dîne
yea canst thou, king, the thine

vil wol überwinden:
very well overcome:

du maht noh manigen vinden
thou canst yet many-a-one find

der dich niht under wegen lât.
who thee not under ways leaves.

umbe mich ez leider anders stât
about me it alas otherwise stands

als du maht hie selbe schouwen.
as thou canst here thyself behold.

jâ ligent si verhouwen
yea lie they hewn

gevallen tief in daz pluot,
fallen deep into the blood,

die durch mih lîp unde guot
who for me life and goods

sazten ûf die wâge.
set on the scale.

in ist an einer lâge
to-them is in an ambush

der tôt vil gremelîche komen
the death very grimly come

und hât si alle mir benomen.»
and has them all from-me taken.»

Der künec sprach «des wil ich jehen,
The king spoke «of-that will I avow,

ich hân gehôrt unt gesehen
I have heard and seen

und sagen von vil grôzer nôt,
and say of very great need,

daz der gemeinlîche tôt
that the common death

den gewalt nie mêr gewan.»
the power never more won.»

der künec hiez dô tragen dan
the king bade then carry thence

beidiu sîn kint und sîn wîp
both his child and his woman

und sîns veigen bruoder lîp:
and his doomed brother's body:

die wurden gepâret ûf den rê.
they were biered on the funeral-bier.

den liuten den wart allen wê
to-the people to-them was to-all woe

die ez mit im sâhen.
who it with him saw.

vor dem hûse nâhen
before the house near

noch vil maneger veige lac,
still very many-a doomed-one lay,

den ir veiclîcher tac
from-whom their doomed day

daz leben hete dâ benomen.
the life had there taken.

nu was ouch der künec komen
now was also the king come

dâ er Îringen vant,
where he Irinc found,

den mit willeger hant
whom with willing hand

des muotes unverdrozzen
of-the mind untiring

Hagene het erscozzen,
Hagen had shot,

da er im angestlîch entran.
when he from-him fearfully escaped.

swie der Hâwartes man
however the Hawart's man

wol strite mit dem degene
well fought with the thane

unt swie doch der starke Hagene
and however yet the strong Hagen

von im wunt wære,
by him wounded were,

der küene Tronegære
the bold man-of-Troneg

het den helt ze tôde erslagen.
had the hero to death slain.

den begunde dô klagen
him began then to-lament

mit Etzeln dem rîchen
with Etzel the rich

alsô klagelîchen
so lamentably

der fürste von Berne:
the prince of Bern:

si sâhen vil ungerne
they saw very unwillingly

die sîne tiefen wunden.
the his deep wounds.

ouh klagete in an den stunden
also lamented him at the hours

der alte meister Hildebrant
the old master Hildebrand

alsô daz man ez wol ervant.
so that one it well perceived.

ouch hulfen klagen in diu wîp
also helped lament him the women

des vil küenen Tenen lîp.
the very bold Dane's body.

den klagete man von sculden:
him lamented one by right:

nâh scœner wîbe hulden
after fair women's favor

ellender man nie baz geranc.
in-exile man never better strove.

ouch muos man im des sagen danc
also must one to-him for-that say thanks

daz er sô hêrlîche warp
that he so lordly strove

und alsô gnendeclîche erstarp
and so boldly died

vor maneges recken ougen.
before many-a warrior's eyes.

sine woldens niht gelouben
they would-it not believe

daz er Hagenen torste bestân.
that he Hagen dared attack.

het ez der helt sider lân,
had it the hero afterward left,

sô möhter wol sîn genesen.
so might-he well have survived.

dô sprach der künec «ez solde wesen:
then spoke the king «it should be:

jâ wære iz anders mir geseit.
yea were it otherwise to-me said.

ir nôt und mîn arebeit
their need and my toil

ich hetez wol allez understân.
I had-it well all prevented.

herre, waz het ich getân
lord, what had I done

Gunthere unt den sînen?
to-Gunther and to-the his?

nu habent si mir der mînen
now have they to-me of-the mine

aller samt enbunnen:
all together begrudged:

nu ist ouch in zerunnen
now is also from-them melted-away

des lebens unt der êre.»
the life and the honor.»

der künec klagete sêre
the king lamented sorely

des starken Îringes ellen
the strong Iring's valor

unde sîner hergesellen.
and of-his war-comrades.

In hiez der wirt ouch tragen dan,
Him bade the host also carry thence,

und mit im drîzec sîner man,
and with him thirty of-his men,

die bî im zuo den stunden
who by him at the hours

ouh tôte wurden funden.
also dead were found.

dô man si gebârôt
when one them biered

dannen truoc als er gebôt,
thence carried as he commanded,

dô vant der künec hêre
then found the king lordly

noch der recken mêre,
still of-the warriors more,

Gunthern den künec rîchen
Gunther the king rich

ligen jæmerlîchen
lie piteously

dâ imz houbt was abe geslagen:
where to-him-the head was off struck:

den begunden si dô klagen.
him began they then to-lament.

als in Ezel der künec sach,
when him Etzel the king saw,

der fürste senlîche sprach
the prince longingly spoke

«ôwê, lieber swâger mîn,
«alas, dear brother-in-law mine,

sold ich dich wider an den Rîn
should I thee back to the Rhine

wol gesunden senden!
well sound send!

daz ich mit mînen henden
that I with my hands

hete daz ervohten,
had that fought-out,

do si selbe niene mohten.
when they themselves never might.

des wolde ich immer wesen vrô.»
of-that would I ever be glad.»

Her Dietrich der sprach dô
Sir Dietrich he spoke then

«her künec, von sînen schulden.
«sir king, for his guilt.

nâh iuwern grôzen hulden
after your great favor

rang ich alsô sêre,
strove I so sorely,

daz ich den helt niht mêre
that I the hero not more

wol gesparn mohte,
well spare might,

wand ez mir niht tohte.
for it to-me not availed.

dô si uns aller unser man
when they us of-all our men

heten âne getân,
had bereft done,

dô schalt mich von dem sal
then reviled me from the hall

Hagen der übermüete her ze tal,
Hagen the arrogant hither to dale,

zuo allem mînem sêre,
to all my sorrow,

daz ichz in niht mêre
that I-it to-them not more

leider kunde vertragen.
alas could endure.

dô mir mîn volc lac erslagen
when to-me my folk lay slain

und iu, herre, iuwer man,
and to-you, lord, your men,

den künec ich vlêgen began
the king I to-beseech began

daz erz reite zeiner süene.
that he-it arranged to-an atonement.

Hagene der küene
Hagen the bold

des vrides niht enwolde.
the truce not would.

er sprach zwiu er in solde,
he spoke why he them should,

sît daz die beide lægen tôt,
since that the both lay dead,

Gîselher und Gêrnôt,
Giselher and Gernot,

unde daz mîn Hildebrant
and that my Hildebrand

het von Burgonden lant
had of Burgundy land

ze tôde Volkêrn erslagen.
to death Volker slain.

er begunde ez sêre klagen,
he began it sorely to-lament,

daz im Hildebrant entran
that from-him Hildebrand escaped

da er die wunden gewan:
where he the wounds got:

want die sluoc im Hagene
for those struck to-him Hagen

hie ûze vor dem gademe
here outside before the hall-house

durh vlinsherte ringe,
through flint-hard rings,

dem küenen getelinge.
the bold kinsman.

Dô bat ich Gunthêre,
Then asked I Gunther,

daz er durch sîn êre
that he for his honor

gedæhte an alle mîne nôt,
thought on all my need,

daz ich unz an mînen tôt
that I until to my death

sînen vride bære,
his truce bore,

daz er dîn gîsel wære
that he thy hostage were

und ouch, künec, der mîne,
and also, king, the mine,

daz ich in zuo dem Rîne
that I him to the Rhine

gesunden wolde bringen.
sound would bring.

dô het er des gedingen,
then had he of-that hope,

er lieze niemen hie genesen.
he let no-one here survive.

daz möhte ouch vil wol sîn gewesen,
that might also very well have been,

wær gerastet im sîn hant.
were rested to-him his hand.

jâ sluoc mich der wîgant,
yea struck me the fighter,

daz wizzet, drî stunde nider,
that know, three times down,

sô daz ich vil kûme wider
so that I very hardly again

mich erholte mit mîner kraft.
myself recovered with my strength.

dô ernerte mich mîn meisterschaft
then saved me my mastery

und mîn wol geruowetiu hant,
and my well rested hand,

daz ich den fürsten gebant
that I the prince bound

mit einer verchwunden.
with a life-wound.

ich bevalch in zuo den stunden
I commended him at the hours

Kriemhilde mîner vrouwen.
to-Kriemhild my lady.

wie mohte ich des getrouwen
how might I of-that trust

daz si den helt hieze slân? 1205
that she the hero bade slay?

ich hete ungerne daz getân,
I had unwillingly that done,

daz ich in gæbe in den tôt.
that I him gave into the death.

ez wart gemêret im sîn nôt
it was increased to-him his need

von sîner swester zorne.
by his sister's anger.

hie lît der wol geborne.» 1210
here lies the well born-one.»

Der künec dô weinende sprach
The king then weeping spoke

«ôwê daz iz ie geschach,
«alas that it ever happened,

mîn grüezen im unt sînen man.
my greeting to-him and to-his men.

wær ez mir ê kunt getân,
were it to-me before known done,

si müesen alle sîn genesen. 1215
they must all have survived.

tiwerr helde kunden wesen
worthier heroes could be

ninder ûf der erde:
nowhere on the earth:

ez wæne ouch immer werde
there suppose also ever be

sô manec küener wîgant.
so many-a bold fighter.

des ligent elliu mîniu lant
of-that lie all my lands

in jâmer und in vreise.
in sorrow and in terror.

jâ ist vil manec weise
yea is very many-a orphan

dâ heime in ir rîchen,
there at-home in their realms,

die si nu pillîchen
who them now rightly

mit freuden solden enpfân.
with joys should receive.

nune mac ich ungeklaget lân
now may I unlamented leave

niht den mînen vîant.»
not the my foe.»

dô sprach meister Hildebrant
then spoke master Hildebrand

«herre, nu lâzet iuwer klagen,
«lord, now leave your lamenting,

und heizt den fürsten hinnen tragen.»
and bid the prince hence carry.»

dô sprach aber her Dietrîch
then spoke again sir Dietrich

«helt alsô lobelîch
«hero so praiseworthy

wæne ie würde geborn,
suppose ever were born,

sô der edel ûz erkorn,
as the noble out chosen-one,

und enwirt ouch nimmer mêre:
and will-be also never more:

des riuwet er mih sêre.»
of-that grieves he me sorely.»

Etzel grieves for his warriors and the guests, and that none who knew told him; Hildebrand blames Hagen, the devil who counseled it all, and judges the heroes paid for their arrogance with God's wrath. Etzel bids Hagen be carried to Gunther and wishes himself dead. The people curse Hagen, though none of it would have happened had the queen not bidden Bloedelin slay Hagen's brother. Volker is found, whose hate-blow nearly killed Hildebrand; Etzel praises his courtesy, and Hildebrand, who cut him down, tells how he slew twelve of Dietrich's household.

Dô sprach der Botelunges sun
Then spoke the Botelung's son

«leider jâ muosen si daz tuon
«alas yea must they that do

daz mir ze scaden ist bekumen
that to-me to harm is come

(ouch hânt sis selbe kleinen frumen),
(also have they-of-it themselves small profit),

do si wurden bestanden
when they were attacked

von mînen wîganden.
by my fighters.

nu riuwent si mich beide.
now grieve they me both.

von schulden ist mir leide
with cause is to-me grievous

umbe mîne recken unde sie,
for my warriors and them,

daz ich sô manegen helt hie
that I so many-a hero here

hete die ez verdageten,
had who it concealed,

daz si mirz niht ensageten.»
that they to-me-it not told.»

dô sprach meister Hildebrant
then spoke master Hildebrand

«nu seht wâ der vâlant
«now see where the devil

liget der ez allez riet.
lies who it all counseled.

daz manz mit guote niht ensciet,
that one-it with good not settled,

daz ist von Hagenen schulden.
that is through Hagen's guilt.

ze mîner vrouwen hulden
to my lady's favor

si möhten wol sîn bekomen.
they might well be come.

her künec, jâ het wir vernomen
sir king, yea had we learned

harte wol diu mære.
very well the tidings.

wir heten iuwer swære
we had your heaviness

vil wol understanden.
very well prevented.

mîner vrouwen anden
my lady's wrong

den wolde rechen Blœdelîn.
that would avenge Bloedelin.

des solde niht geschehen sîn.
of-that should not happened be.

hie ist übele gebouwen.
here is badly built.

wer mohte des getrouwen
who might of-that trust

daz alsô manec küene man
that so many-a bold man

hie den lîp solde lân
here the life should leave

durch den Sîfrides tôt,
for the Siegfried's death,

unt daz diu ungefüegiu nôt
and that the monstrous need

in iuwerm hove solde ergên?
in your court should come-to-pass?

ine kan mihs anders niht verstên,
I can me-of-it otherwise not understand,

wan daz die helde ûz erkorn
but that the heroes out chosen

den vreislîchen gotes zorn
the dreadful God's anger

nu lange her verdienet hân.
now long hither earned have.

done kundez langer niht gestân
then could-it longer not stand

über ir zil einen tac:
over their mark one day:

dô muosen si den gotes slac
then must they the God's blow

lîden durch ir übermuot.
suffer for their arrogance.

des ligt hie manec helt guot,
of-that lies here many-a hero good,

der in manegem sturme herte
who in many-a assault hard

sich dicke wol erwerte,
himself often well defended,

und sint nu hie erstorben.
and are now here perished.

daz hânt si in selbe erworben.»
that have they for-them themselves earned.»

Dô sprach der künec rîche
Then spoke the king rich

in leide güetlîche
in grief kindly

«nu heizet balde Hagen
«now bid quickly Hagen

zuo Gunther sînem herren tragen
to Gunther his lord carry

und zuo den anderen hin.
and to the others thither.

ôwê deich inder lebendec pin,
alas that-I anywhere alive am,

daz müeze got erbarmen;
that may God pity;

und lâze mih vil armen
and let me very wretched-one

leben nu niht mêre
live now not more

in disem grôzen sêre,
in this great sorrow,

daz mich neme der tôt:
that me take the death:

des wær mir», sprach der künec, «nôt.»
of-that were to-me», spoke the king, «need.»

dô die liute Hagenen sâhen,
when the people Hagen saw,

si begunden zuo zim gâhen:
they began thither to-him hasten:

im wart gevluochet sêre.
him was cursed sorely.

ir vreude und ouch ir êre,
their joy and also their honor,

der was vil von im verlorn.
of-those was much by him lost.

die liute reiten durch ir zorn,
the people said for their anger,

ez wær von sînen schulden.
it were through his guilt.

wider niemens hulden
against no-one's favor

het er dâ niht getân,
had he there not done,

het diu künegîn daz eine lân
had the queen that one-thing left

daz si Blœdelînen
that she Bloedelin

Hagenen den bruoder sînen
Hagen's the brother his

ze tôde niht het heizen slân:
to death not had bid slay:

sone wær es alles niht getân.
so were it at-all not done.

dô werte sich der wîgant,
then defended himself the fighter,

daz die von Burgonden lant
so-that those of Burgundy land

muosen komen in den strît,
must come into the battle,

dâ von vil manec wunde wît
there from very many-a wound wide

sider wart gehouwen.
afterward was hewn.

ez was alsô gebrouwen
it was so brewed
von des tiuvels sculden.
through the devil's guilt.
nâch niemannes hulden
after no-one's favor
kunden si gewerben:
could they act:
des muosen si ersterben.
of-that must they die.
Mit der rede giengen dan
With the speech went thence
der künec unt die zwêne man
the king and the two men
mit wüefendem lûte,
with wailing sound,
da her Dietrich sîner trûte
where sir Dietrich of-his beloved
manegen recken ligen vant.
many-a warrior lie found.
ûzen vor des sales want
outside before the hall's wall
sach er einen hie ligen:
saw he one here lie:
sîne ringe durchsigen
his rings soaked-through
wâren von dem pluote.
were with the blood.
dô sprach der helt guote
then spoke the hero good
«Hildebrant, wer ist daz?»
«Hildebrand, who is that?»

er antwurt im âne haz
he answered him without hate

«herre, daz ist Volkêr,
«lord, that is Volker,

der uns diu grœzesten sêr
who us the greatest sorrows

hât mit sînen handen
has with his hands

gefrümt in disen landen.
done in these lands.

er hât gedienet sô den solt,
he has earned so the wage,

daz ich der sêle nimmer holt
that I to-the soul never favorable

wol werden nemac.
well become may.

er sluoc mir einen nîtslac
he struck me a hate-blow

ûf die mîne ringe,
upon the my rings,

daz der mîn gedinge
that the my hope

zem lebne was vil kleine.
to-the life was very small.

der helt bestuont mich eine:
the hero attacked me alone:

ih het ouch in bestanden.
I had also him attacked.

küener helt zen handen
bolder hero at hands

videlens nie mêr began.
fiddling never more began.

het mich gescheiden niht her dan
had me parted not hither thence

Helpfrich, daz wil ich iu sagen,
Helpfrich, that will I you tell,

sô hete Volkêr mich erslagen.»
so had Volker me slain.»

«Ôwê», sprach der künec rîch,
«Alas», spoke the king rich,

«sîn zuht diu was sô lobelîch,
«his courtesy that was so praiseworthy,

dar zuo vil manlîch gemuot,
there to very manly minded,

daz ez mir immer wê tuot
that it me ever woe does

daz er noh solde ersterben,
that he yet should die,

und sô gâhes verderben.»
and so suddenly perish.»

Etzel dô vrâgte mære,
Etzel then asked tidings,

wann er geborn wære.
whence he born were.

dô sprach meister Hildebrant,
then spoke master Hildebrand,

er hete bî Rîne daz lant
he had by Rhine the land

mit Gunthere besezzen:
with Gunther held:

«der helt vil vermezzen
«the hero very daring

was von Alzeye erborn.
was of Alzey born.

sîn manheit ûz erkorn
his manhood out chosen

diu ist alze fruo gelegen.»
that is all-too early laid-low.»

dô klagt her Dietrich den degen:
then lamented sir Dietrich the thane:

durch sîn getriuwelîchen muot
for his faithful spirit

weinte in der helt guot.
wept him the hero good.

«waz klaget ir?» sprach dô Hildebrant:
«what lament you?» spoke then Hildebrand:

«uns hât diu Volkêres hant
«us has the Volker's hand

gescadet hie sô sêre,
harmed here so sorely,

daz wir ez nimmer mêre
that we it never more

kunnen überwinden.
can overcome.

der dînen ingesinden
of-the thy household

er eine hât wol zwelve erslagen.
he alone has full twelve slain.

gote wil ich des danc sagen
to-God will I for-that thanks say

daz er langer niht genas.
that he longer not survived.

do ich pî im in dem sturme was,
when I by him in the assault was,

sô sêre werte sich der degen,
so sorely defended himself the thane,

ez dôz alsam von donreslegen.
it boomed just-as with thunder-claps.

idoch verhiu ich in sît:
yet hewed I him afterward:

dise wunden alsô wît
these wounds so wide

im sluogen mîne hende.
him struck my hands.

daz er in ellende
that he in exile

vor mir veiger ist gelegen,
before me doomed is laid,

des muoz ih siuften umben degen,
of-that must I sigh for-the thane,

wand ouh ich ellende bin.
for also I in-exile am.

der sîn vil hôhvertiger sin
the his very proud mind

der scadet uns immer mêre.
that harms us ever more.

er warp nâch ganzer êre.
he strove after whole honor.

durch daz er videlen kunde,
for that he fiddle could,

daz volc in zaller stunde
the people him at-all hours

hiezen einen spileman:
called a minstrel:

als ich iu wol gesagen kan,
as I you well tell can,

er was von vrîen liden komen,
he was from free limbs come,

und het sich daz an genomen
and had himself that on taken

daz er diente scœnen vrouwen.
that he served fair ladies.

nu ligt von im verhouwen
now lies by him hewn-down

sô manec edel wîgant,
so many-a noble fighter,

daz nie videlæres hant
that never fiddler's hand

daz wunder mê geworhte,
the wonder more wrought,

als der unervorhte
as the fearless-one

in disem sturme hât getân.
in this assault has done.

des muoz mîn herze vreude lân.»
of-that must my heart joy leave.»

VIII · THE BURGUNDIAN DEAD AND DIETRICH'S MEN

Inside the hall they find Dankwart, who slew four times as many as Hagen; Dietrich praises him, but Hildebrand would leave him unpraised, for his hand has served them ill. Then Dietrich's own men: Wolfbrand, his helmet hewn through by Dankwart; Sigestap, Dietrich's cousin and duke of Bern, slain by Volker; Wolfwin, Hildebrand's nephew, son of Nere, slain by Giselher, who also slew Nitger and Gerbart; and Wignand, slain by Gunther. Dietrich sighs again and again, and Etzel wails so loud that the house might burst above him.

Der künec hiez in dannen tragen,
The king bade him thence carry,

dâ der wuof unt daz klagen
where the wailing and the lamenting

dort bî den andern was.
there by the others was.

hey waz man ir sît las,
hey what one of-them afterward gathered,

der stolzen helede guote,
of-the proud heroes good,

dar nâh ûz dem pluote!
there after out-of the blood!

die funden si dar inne.
whom found they there inside.

mit leide in unsinne
with grief in madness

gie dô der Bernære
went then the Bernese

und schouwet sîne swære.
and beheld his heaviness.

der êrste den er dâ vant,
the first whom he there found,

daz was von Burgonden lant
that was from Burgundy land

Hagenen bruoder Dancwart,
Hagen's brother Dankwart,

der vil manegen rinc scart
who very many-a ring notched

gemachet het dar inne.
made had there inside.

man saget daz vil grimme
one says that very grim

von Tronege Hagen wær über al.
of Troneg Hagen were over all.

doch sluoc ir in dem sal
yet slew of-them in the hall

Dancwart der degen ziere
Dankwart the thane splendid

mêr danne Hagenen viere.
more than Hagen four.

«er riuwet mich», sprach Dietrîch,
«he grieves me», spoke Dietrich,

sîn muot der was sô tugentlîch:
his spirit that was so virtuous:

«ob ez ein künec wære,
«if it a king were,

son möht der helt mære
so might the hero famed

niht hêrlîcher hân getân.»
not more-lordly have done.»

«ir muget in ungelobet lân
«you may him unpraised leave

vil wol», sprach dô Hildebrant.
very well», spoke then Hildebrand.

«gesehet ir waz iu sîn hant
«(if)-see you what to-you his hand

hât gedient in sînen lesten tagen,
has served in his last days,

sô muoz iu deste wirs behagen
so must to-you the worse please

daz er ellen ie gewan.
that he valor ever won.

wand ich des wizzen nine kan
for I that know not can

ob ir decheiner mêre
whether of-them any more

uns habe gescadet sô sêre.»
us have harmed so sorely.»

der künec dô balde daz bevalch
the king then quickly that commanded

von Rîne umben marscalch,
from Rhine about-the marshal,

daz man in ze den andern truoc.
that one him to the others carried.

do begunde weinen der genuoc
then began weep of-them enough

die den helt sâhen.
who the hero saw.

sich huop in allen gâhen
itself raised in all haste

ein iteniuwez rüefen,
a renewed crying,

vil gremelîchez wüefen.
very grim wailing.

dô sprach man unde wîp
then spoke man and woman

«der nam Blœdelîn den lîp.»
«he took Bloedelin the life.»

Den scal der künec hôrte:
The clamor the king heard:

sîn trüebez herze im stôrte
his troubled heart him stirred

ditze wüefen unde klagen.
this wailing and lamenting.

hie mugt ir wunder hœren sagen.
here may you wonder hear tell.

er trat in den palas
he stepped into the palace

dâ diu nôt gewesen was.
where the need been had.

dô vant er ligen einen man:
then found he lie a man:

sîne ringe wol getân
his rings well made

im lûhten ûz dem pluote;
to-him shone out-of the blood;

im was der helm guote
to-him was the helmet good

verhouwen durh die riemen.
hewn through the straps.

daz enhet im ander niemen
that had to-him other no-one

niwan Dancwart getân.
but Dankwart done.

ez was ein Dietrîches man
it was a Dietrich's man

und was geheizen Wolfprant.
and was called Wolfbrand.

do erkande in der wîgant,
then recognized him the fighter,

der edele Bernære.
the noble Bernese.

aller sîner swære
of-all his heaviness

der gehüget er dâ bî:
that remembered he there by:

er wart ouch aller vreuden vrî,
he became also of-all joys free,

die sîn herze ie gewan.
which his heart ever won.

der helt mit leide began
the hero with grief began

weinen elliu sîniu sêr:
weep all his sorrows:

des half im der künec hêr.
in-that helped him the king lordly.

Etzel für Dietrîche sprach
Etzel before Dietrich spoke

«ôwê daz ich ie gesach
«alas that I ever saw

geligen disen helt tôt.
lie this hero dead.

er ist in maneger sturmes nôt
he is in many-a assault's need

sô dicke frümeclîch genesen.
so often valiantly survived.

in swes helfe er solde wesen,
in whose help he should be,

der möhtes guoten trôst hân.»
that-one might-of-it good comfort have.»

sine kundenz niht verlân
they could-it not leave

sine weinten harte sêre.
but-they wept very sorely.

ez enwirdet nimmer mêre
it will-be never more

ich wæn geklaget sô grimme,
I think lamented so grimly,

noch mit sô lûter stimme,
nor with so loud voice,

sô wart geklaget Wolfprant.
as was lamented Wolfbrand.

Bî dem recken man dô vant
By the warrior one then found

Sigestabe den rîchen
Sigestap the rich

ligen jæmerlîchen,
lie piteously,

den herzogen von Berne.
the duke of Bern.

lieht alsô die sterne
bright as the stars

im lûhten steine durch die wât.
to-him shone stones through the clothing.

«wer was der dich erslagen hât?» 1490
«who was he-who thee slain has?»

sprach der herre Dietrich.
spoke the lord Dietrich.

«helt, nu riuwest du mich,
«hero, now grievest thou me,

tiwer degen vil guoter.
precious thane very good.

mîn vater unt dîn muoter
my father and thy mother

die wâren eines vater kint. 1495
they were of-one father children.

wie tief dir dîne wunden sint,
how deep to-thee thy wounds are,

edeler recke hêre!
noble warrior lordly!

wie vil du mîner êre
how much thou of-my honor

über rucke hâst getragen!»
over back hast carried!»

«in hât Volkêr erslagen,» 1500
«him has Volker slain,»

sprach dô meister Hildebrant.
spoke then master Hildebrand.

«dar umbe sluoc ouh in mîn hant.
«there for struck also him my hand.

ich stuont dâ bî in beiden:
I stood there by them both:

ine kundez niht gescheiden,
I could-it not part,

niwan mit dem ende.»
but with the end.»

«ôwê mîn ellende»,
«alas my exile»,

sprach dô der Bernære.
spoke then the Bernese.

«daz ich erstorben wære!
«that I dead were!

sô hete got vil wol getân.
so had God very well done.

waz ich arman vlorn hân
what I poor-man lost have

friunt! deiz got erbarme.»
friend! that-it God pity.»

den schilt von dem arme
the shield from the arm

er Sigestabe nemen hiez.
he Sigestap take bade.

manegen trahen nider liez
many-a tear down let

Dietrich und Hildebrant.
Dietrich and Hildebrand.

Etzeln vreude was gewant
Etzel's joy was turned

mit im an daz minnist.
with him to the least.

sin heten anders keinen list,
they had other no device,

wan ungefüegiu herzen sêr:
but monstrous heart's sorrows:

dane was niht kurzwîle mêr.
there was no pastime more.

Do bekand er Wolfwîne
Then recognized he Wolfwin

von eines helmes schîne,
by a helmet's shine,

den der helt ûfe truoc.
which the hero on bore.

der was lûter genuoc:
that was bright enough:

nu was er naz von pluote.
now was it wet with blood.

jâ was der degen guote
yea was the thane good

tôt gevallen an die want.
dead fallen against the wall.

dô sprach meister Hildebrant
then spoke master Hildebrand

«herre, deist der neve mîn
«lord, that-is the nephew mine

unt der burgrâve dîn,
and the burgrave thine,

sun des küenen Nêren.
son of-the bold Nere.

nie helt sô gar unhêren
never hero so wholly unlordly

ich gesach bî mîner zît.
I saw in my time.

nu seht wie den fluz gît
now see how the flow gives

daz pluot von sînen wunden.
the blood from his wounds.

der recke wart nie funden
the warrior was never found

an deheiner zageheit.
in any cowardice.

in disem sturm er hie streit
in this assault he here fought

wol einem degene gelîch:
well a thane like:

dô sluoc in der künec rîch,
then slew him the king rich,

Gîselher der junge
Giselher the young

voget der Nibelunge.
lord of-the Nibelungs.

der sluoc ouh Nîtgêre.
he slew also Nitger.

der edel unt der hêre,
the noble and the lordly,

do er si ervalte beide
when he them felled both

(er tet uns vil ze leide),
(he did us very to sorrow),

er spranc zuo Gêrbarten.
he leapt to Gerbart.

die helde niht ensparten
the heroes not spared

diu scarpfen wâfen an der hant:
the sharp weapons in the hand:

dô vlugen in diu helmbant
then flew to-them the helmet-bands

hôhe in rôtem fiure.
high in red fire.

Gîselher der ungehiure
Giselher the monstrous

sluoc die helde alle drî.
slew the heroes all three.

ouch ligt in hie beneben bî
also lies to-them here beside by

der vil küene Wîcnant:
the very bold Wignand:

den sluoc diu Guntheres hant,
him slew the Gunther's hand,

der herre ûz Burgenden.
the lord from Burgundy.

daz enkunde niht erwenden
that could not avert

diu helfe aller dîner man,
the help of-all thy men,

daz er wære komen dan.
that he were come thence.

ouch sluoc er Sigehêre
also slew he Sigeher

einen degen hêre,
a thane lordly,

unt den küenen Wîcharten.
and the bold Wichart.

si beide lützel sparten
they both little spared

in sturme die hende.
in assault the hands.

ir beider ellende
their both's exile

muoz uns immer nâch gân.»
must us ever after go.»

vil dicke siuften began
very often sigh began

mit jâmer dô her Dietrîch.
with sorrow then sir Dietrich.

Etzel der künec rîch
Etzel the king rich

den sûft mit lûte erschufte:
the sigh with sound raised:

sîn wüefen gegen dem lufte
his wailing toward the air

mit kraft erschal sô sêre,
with force rang so sorely,

daz ob dem künege hêre
that above the king lordly

von sîner klage der vesten
from his lament of-the fortress

daz hûs moht nider bresten.
the house might down burst.

IX · WOLFHART

The dead are carried from the hall, which is walled with corpses; women strip the armor from the slain, and Etzel rebukes the able men who leave it to them. Blood runs out through the bolt-holes, and eight hundred are carried out. Hildebrand finds his nephew Wolfhart, slain by young Giselher, his sword clenched so hard it must be pried out with tongs, and Dietrich laments that his good sword will never be swung so again. Hildebrand bids him cease, and the people mourn the hero.

Dô si genuoc geklageten die
When they enough lamented those

die sie funden heten hie,
whom they found had here,

dô sâhn si daz der palas
then saw they that the palace

gemûret allenthalben was
walled on-all-sides was

von den verchwunden.
with the mortally-wounded.

swâ si wurden funden,
wherever they were found,

dannen hiez si tragen Dietrîch.
thence bade them carry Dietrich.

ir leit daz was sô jæmerlîch
their grief that was so piteous

und sô grœzlîch ir klagen, 1585
and so mighty their lamenting,

daz iu daz niemen kan gesagen.
that you that no-one can tell.

hie ûze weinten diu wîp:
here outside wept the women:

vil maneger juncvrouwen lîp
very many-a young-lady's body

stuont mit grôzem leide
stood with great grief

gein trüeber ougen weide. 1590
toward sad eyes' pasture.

ez was ein wunderlîch gesciht:
it was a wondrous event:

dane was sô vil der manne niht,
there was so many of-the men not,

die di tôten zügen ûz der wât,
who the dead drew out-of the clothing,

die man dâ veige funden hât.
whom one there doomed found has.

nu seht, wi erwerte daz ir lîp, 1595
now see, how defended that their body,

daz so scœne meide unde wîp
that so fair maidens and women

entwâfen muosen die tôten?
unarm must the dead?

vil manegen rinc rôten
very many-a ring red

sah man von vrouwen abe gezogen.
saw one by women off drawn.

der meister saget daz ungelogen
the master says that unlied

sîn disiu mære:
be these tidings:

in herzenlîcher swære
in heartfelt heaviness

und mit jâmerhaften siten
and with sorrowful manners

die riemen vrouwen ûf sniten,
the straps women up cut,

der si niht enstricken kunden.
which they not untie could.

dô der künec daz het erfunden
when the king that had learned

daz si sie sniten ûz der wât,
that they them cut out-of the clothing,

swaz er her geweinet hât,
whatever he hitherto wept has,

daz was allez noh ein niht.
that was all still a nothing.

ungemüete hete pfliht
ill-humor had charge

sîner ungeteilten spil.
of-his undivided game.

er sah gesunder manne vil,
he saw of-sound men many,

die dar kômen durh die nôt,
who there came for the need,

dâ si ir mâge funden tôt.
where they their kin found dead.

die strâfte der künec sêre.
those rebuked the king sorely.

«welt ir des haben êre,
«will you of-that have honor,

daz wîp mit tôten umbe gânt
that women with dead about go

unt daz hie gesunde man stânt
and that here sound men stand

die ez pillîcher tæten?»
who it more-fittingly did?»

er gebôt daz si entnæten
he commanded that they unsewed

die recken ûz den ringen.
the warriors out-of the rings.

der wirt der kunde bringen
the host he could bring

daz volc ze grôzen sorgen:
the folk to great cares:

jâ muosen si im porgen
yea must they to-him lend

vil herten dienest ân ir danc.
very hard service without their thanks.

ir witze wâren dar zuo kranc,
their wits were there to weak,

wie si se bræhten ûz der wât.
how they them brought out-of the clothing.

der künec het niht zornes rât:
the king had not of-anger counsel:

von in gie er sâ zehant
from them went he straightway at-once

da er aber Dietrîchen vant.
where he again Dietrich found.

Unmüezec was her Dietrich:
Unresting was sir Dietrich:

jâ sah er ligen umbe sich
yea saw he lie about himself

der liute sam der steine.
of-the people as of-the stones.

idoch entruoc niht eine
yet bore not alone

die sorge der von Berne.
the care he of Bern.

der künec sah ungerne
the king saw unwillingly

sînen schaden alsô grôz.
his harm so great.

daz pluot allenthalben vlôz
the blood on-all-sides flowed

durh diu rigelloch her nider:
through the bolt-holes hither down:

si giengen her oder wider,
they went hither or back,

sine funden niht wan tôten.
they found nothing but dead.

den sal von pluote rôten
the hall with blood red

sah man von den wunden.
saw one from the wounds.

die vil wol gesunden
those very well sound

wurden siech von der klage:
became sick from the lament:

ez enwart nie bî deheinem tage
it was never on any day

gewüefet alsô sêre.
wailed so sorely.

aht hundert oder mêre
eight hundred or more

wâren ir nu ûz getragen.
were of-them now out carried.

dô huop sich sunder niuwez klagen:
then raised itself apart new lamenting:

daz uobte meister Hildebrant,
that practiced master Hildebrand,

dô er Wolfharten vant.
when he Wolfhart found.

Als er sînen neven sach,
When he his nephew saw,

zuo sîme herren er dô sprach
to his lord he then spoke

«nu seht, vil edel Dietrich,
«now see, very noble Dietrich,

wie der tôt umbe sich
how the death about itself

mit kreften hât gebouwen.
with powers has built.

wie solde ich des getrouwen
how should I that trust

daz eins sô tumben mannes hant
that a so young man's hand

als Gîselher der wîgant
as Giselher the fighter

slüege disen volcdegen?
should-slay this folk-thane?

nu sint si beide hie gelegen,
now are they both here laid,

der künec unt ouch der neve mîn.
the king and also the nephew mine.

daz müeze got geklaget sîn,
that may God lamented be,

daz si in sturmes stunden
that they in assault's hours

ie ein ander funden.»
ever one another found.»

her Dietrich scouwet sînen man:
sir Dietrich beheld his man:

wie harte in jâmern began!
how hard him to-grieve began!

dô sah er Wolfharte
then saw he Wolfhart

mit rœtelohtem barte
with reddish beard

gevallen nider in daz pluot.
fallen down into the blood.

dô mantez den helt guot
then reminded-it the hero good

aller sîner leide.
of-all his grief.

dô weintens aber beide
then wept-they again both

in angestlîchen sorgen.
in anxious cares.

die helfe unverborgen
the help unbidden

man dô an Etzelen vant.
one then in Etzel found.

dâ stuont mit wintender hant
there stood with wringing hand

hie bî Dietrîche
here by Dietrich

in klage der künec rîche.
in lament the king rich.

Wolfhart der wîgant
Wolfhart the fighter

het verklummen in der hant
had clenched in the hand

daz swert in sturmherter nôt,
the sword in assault-hard need,

swie der helt wære tôt,
however the hero were dead,

daz Dietrich und Hildebrant
that Dietrich and Hildebrand

im daz swert ûz der hant
to-him the sword out-of the hand

kunden niht gebrechen,
could not break,

dem zornmuotes vrechen,
to-the wrathful-minded bold-one,

unz daz siz mit zangen
until that they-it with tongs

ûz sînen vingern langen
out-of his fingers long

muosen klœzen dem man.
must pry to-the man.

dô man daz wâfen gewan,
when one the weapon won,

«ôwê», sprach her Dietrich,
«alas», spoke sir Dietrich,

«guot swert, wer sol dich
«good sword, who shall thee

nu alsô hêrlîche tragen?
now so lordly bear?

du wirdest nimmer mêr geslagen
thou wilt-be never more struck

sô vil bî künegen rîchen,
so much by kings rich,

als dich vil lobelîchen
as thee very praiseworthily

hât geslagen Wolfhart.
has struck Wolfhart.

wê deich ie geborn wart!
woe that-I ever born was!

wie mir mîn helfe ist benomen!
how to-me my help is taken!

war sol ich ellender komen?»
whither shall I exile come?»

Wolfhart vor den wîganden
Wolfhart before the fighters

mit durchpizzenen zanden
with bitten-through teeth

noch lac in dem pluote.
still lay in the blood.

man hiez den helt guote
one bade the hero good

heben ûz der ascen:
lift out-of the ashes:

sîn herre bat in wascen
his lord bade him wash

und vlöwen ûz den ringen.
and rinse out-of the rings.

vil grôzes gedingen
very great hope

was im vil an im gelegen.
was to-him much on him laid.

dô stuont er über den werden degen:
then stood he over the worthy thane:

sîn tôt im jâmer brâhte.
his death to-him sorrow brought.

hey waz er dô gedâhte
hey what he then thought

des im gedienet het der man!
of-what to-him served had the man!

dâ von er reden dô began.
there of he to-speak then began.

«ôwê», sprach her Dietrich,
«alas», spoke sir Dietrich,

«mich müet daz du, helt, mich
«me grieves that thou, hero, me

nu bringest nimmer mêre
now bringest never more

ze sturme in solher êre
to assault in such honor

sô du mich dicke hâst brâht.
as thou me often hast brought.

got hât übele mich bedâht,
God has ill me provided,

daz er dih leben niht enlie.
that he thee live not let.

swâ ez an die herte gie,
wherever it to the hard-press went,

dâ wær du ie beneben mîn:
there were thou ever beside me:

nu getrœste ich mih dîn
now comfort I me of-thee

leider nimmer mêre.
alas never more.

Etzel der künec hêre
Etzel the king lordly

hât manegen sig von dir genomen.
has many-a victory through thee taken.

nu ist iz leider alsô komen,
now is it alas so come,

dîn helfe ist uns geswichen.
thy help is to-us failed.

dîn varwe ist dir erblichen
thy color is to-thee paled

von Gîselheres wunden.
from Giselher's wounds.

wist ich an disen stunden
should-know I in these hours

an wem ihz rechen solde,
on whom I-it avenge should,

wie gerne ih dir nu wolde
how gladly I thee now would

dienen, tugenthafter man,
serve, virtuous man,

als du mir dicke hâst getân!
as thou to-me often hast done!

des enmag et leider niht gesîn.
that may now alas not be.

aller der trôst mîn
all the comfort mine

der lît hie an dem ende.
that lies here at the end.

mîn langez ellende
my long exile

hât vaste sich gemêret.
has fast itself increased.

der tac sî gunêret,
the day be dishonored,

daz ich ie geschiet von Berne.
that I ever parted from Bern.

ir wâret bî mir gerne,
you were by me gladly,

mîne mâge und mîne man:
my kin and my men:

swaz ich ze tuonne ie gewan,
whatever I to do ever won,

des hulft ir mir gemeine.
in-that helped you me together.

nu stên ich alters eine.» 1750
now stand I quite alone.»

Dô sprach meister Hildebrant
Then spoke master Hildebrand

«ôwê, vil edel wîgant,
«alas, very noble fighter,

wan lât ir iuwer klagen stân?
why let you your lamenting stand?

solden wir des frumen hân,
should we of-that have profit,

sô klaget ich immer mêre 1755
so would-lament I ever more

disen degen hêre:
this thane lordly:

er was mîner swester sun.
he was my sister's son.

herre, irn sult es niht tuon:
lord, you shall it not do:

von jâmer wendet iuwern muot.
from sorrow turn your spirit.

klage diu ist niemen guot.» 1760
lament that is to-no-one good.»

den recken man dô hin truoc.
the warrior one then away carried.

er wart gescouwet genuoc
he was beheld enough

von den lantliuten.
by the country-folk.

si begunden triuten
they began caress

den helt nâh sînem ende:
the hero after his end:

von maneger wîzen hende
by many-a white hand

wart der helt gegriffen an.
was the hero touched on.

ez wære wîp oder man,
it were woman or man,

die in ê bekanden,
who him before knew,

mit zuo gedruhten handen
with to pressed hands

weinten si in sêre.
wept they him sorely.

sol des iemen haben êre
shall of-that anyone have honor

der nâch tôde wirt gekleit,
who after death is lamented,

sô het er mit der wârheit
so had he with the truth

êren vil erworben.
honors much earned.

an im lac verdorben
in him lay ruined

vil maneger swinder swertes swanc.
very many-a swift sword's swing.

klaget man tûsent jâr lanc,
(if)-laments one thousand years long,

sô mües mans doh vergezzen.
so must one-him yet forget.

Etzel sits in the doorway in the blood. Giselher is found where he slew Wolfhart, and Dietrich and Hildebrand lament their foe, who slew thirty of Dietrich's men and, had Volker's counsel held, would have wed the maiden betrothed to him at Bechelaren. He is borne to where Kriemhild lies. Gernot is found with a life-wound from Rüedeger, whom he also slew, Rüedeger's gift still in his hand; Etzel would have raised his son on such a model, and says Kriemhild could have parted Hagen from the three. The ladies see Gernot dead, and Rüedeger is found.

Der wirt was gesezzen
The host was seated

under die tür in daz pluot.
under the door in the blood.

sô sêre klaget der helt guot,
so sorely lamented the hero good,

daz in niemen trœsten kunde.
that him no-one comfort could.

sît wart in kurzer stunde
afterward was in short while

funden der edel wîgant,
found the noble fighter,

Gîselher von Burgonden lant,
Giselher of Burgundy land,

da er dâ Wolfharten sluoc.
where he there Wolfhart slew.

bî im lag ir noch genuoc,
by him lay of-them still enough,

die er ouch het erslagen.
whom he also had slain.

do begunden si ir vînt klagen,
then began they their foe to-lament,

her Dietrich und Hildebrant.
sir Dietrich and Hildebrand.

si sprâchen «ôwê, daz dîn lant
they spoke «alas, that thy land

von dir nu erbelôsez lît!
by thee now heirless lies!

ôwê, daz dîn golt gît
alas, that thy gold gives

nu niemen sam du tæte.
now no-one as thou did.

du wær sô êren stæte,
thou were so of-honor steadfast,

daz dich des nie gedûhte vil
that thee of-it never seemed much

swaz du ze freuden unt ze spil
whatever thou to joys and to game

der werlde kundest machen.
to-the world couldst make.

du bist von hôhen sachen
thou art from high things

komen unz an dîn ende.
come until to thy end.

uns habent dîne hende
us have thy hands

der leide hie sô vil getân,
of-the grief here so much done,

daz nie tumber helt began
that never young hero began

sich rechen alsô sêre.
himself avenge so sorely.

drîzec oder mêre
thirty or more

sluoc mir dîn ellen mære
slew of-me thy valor famed

der küenen Bernære.
of-the bold Bernese.

ôwê wan wære daz ergân
alas would-that were that come-about

als im riet der spileman,
as him counseled the minstrel,

der küene degen Volkêr!
the bold thane Volker!

sô wær der junger künec hêr
so were the young king lordly

worden der margrâvinne man.
become the margravine's husband.

mit râte truogen si daz an,
with counsel bore they that on,

dô si ze Bechelâren
when they at Bechelaren

bî Rüedegêre wâren:
with Rüedeger were:

er lobte si ze wîbe
he vowed her to woman

ze liebem lanclîbe;
to dear long-life;

ze trûte lobt ouch si den degen.
to beloved vowed also she the thane.

nu ist vil übele gelegen
now is very ill laid

ir gedinge und diu vreude mîn.
their hope and the joy mine.

ich solt vil unvertriben sîn
I should very undriven be

von künegen immer mêre,
by kings ever more,

ob lebt der degen hêre.
if lived the thane lordly.

diu margrâvinne Gŏtlint
the margravine Gotelind

diu ist mîner basen kint:
she is of-my aunt child:

dâ von erbet si mich an.
there from inherits she from-me on.

nu ist diu maget wol getân
now is the maiden well made

verwitewet leider alze fruo.
widowed alas all-too early.

nune weiz ich anders waz ich tuo,
now-not know I otherwise what I do,

ine bit iz got verenden.»
unless-I bid it God to-end.»

Mit krachenden henden
With cracking hands

man huop den helt mære:
one lifted the hero famed:

er was ein teil ze swære,
he was a part too heavy,

er enpfiel in wider in daz wal.
he fell from-them back into the slaughter.

vor wuofe erdôz dô aber der sal
with wailing resounded then again the hall

von wîben und von mannen.
of women and of men.

idoh truoc man in dannen
yet carried one him thence

dâ man Kriemhilde vant.
where one Kriemhild found.

diu kint von Burgonden lant
the children of Burgundy land

hiez man zesamne bringen.
bade one together bring.

daz geschach ûf den gedingen:
that happened upon the hope:

durch daz si wâren kristen,
for that they were Christians,

ir engel vil wol wisten
their angels very well knew

war ir sêle solden komen.
whither their souls should come.

wart ê wuofes iht vernomen
was before of-wailing anything heard

von herzenlîchem leide,
of heartfelt grief,

daz tâten nu die beide,
that did now the both,

die kristen unt die heiden:
the Christians and the heathens:

ir klage was unbescheiden.
their lament was immoderate.

Dô vant man Gêrnôten
Then found one Gernot

sô sêre verschrôten
so sorely cut-up

mit einer verchwunden:
with a life-wound:

gein den brusten unden
toward the breast below

was si wol ellen wît geslagen.
was it full ell wide struck.

swie wol ze scerme kunde tragen
however well to guard could bear

der recke sînes scildes rant,
the warrior his shield's rim,

in het diu Rüedegêres hant
him had the Rüedeger's hand

verwundet alsô sêre,
wounded so sorely,

daz der helt niht mêre
that the hero not more

der wunden mohte genesen:
of-the wound might recover:

dâ von muose er tôt wesen,
there from must he dead be,

wand in het bestanden
for him had attacked

ein helt zuo sînen handen,
a hero at his hands,

Rüedgêr von Bechelâren,
Rüedeger of Bechelaren,

dâ si in sturme wâren.
where they in assault were.

ouch het er Rüedegêre erslagen,
also had he Rüedeger slain,

den man nimmer verklagen
whom one never cease-lamenting

ze dirre werlde kunde
in this world could

unz an die lesten stunde.
until to the last hour.

dô sah der alte Hildebrant
then saw the old Hildebrand

die gâbe in Gêrnôtes hant,
the gift in Gernot's hand,

die im het Rüedegêr getân.
which to-him had Rüedeger made.

hêt ez der helt verlân,
had it the hero foregone,

waz ob er wære genesen?
what if he were survived?

niemen dorfte küener wesen
no-one needed bolder be

danne der herre Gêrnôt.
than the lord Gernot.

man sah im noch daz swert rôt
one saw to-him still the sword red

von bluote naz an sîner hant.
with blood wet in his hand.

dô sah meister Hildebrant
then looked master Hildebrand

nâch des swertes ecke:
after the sword's edge:

scharten noch vlecke
notches nor flecks

er dâ ninder ane vant;
he there nowhere on found;

want diu Rüedegêres hant
for the Rüedeger's hand

kunde wunschlîche geben.
could perfectly give.

er het allez sîn leben
he had all his life

gevlizzen sich ûf êre:
applied himself to honor:

man klaget in deste mêre.
one laments him the more.

Dô sprach der künec rîche
Then spoke the king rich

zem herren Dietrîche
to-the lord Dietrich

«solde dirre helt leben,
«should this hero live,

sô het ich allez mîn geben
so had I all my giving

an mînen sune wol gewant.
on my son well turned.

nâh den von Burgonden lant
after those of Burgundy land

het daz kint gerâten,
had the child turned-out,

die ie daz beste tâten:
who ever the best did:

sam het ouch mîn sun getân.
so had also my son done.

dem het ich mîniu lant lân:
to-him had I my lands left:

der wære wol sô rîche,
he were well so rich,

daz si al gelîche
that they all alike

heten trôst an den degen.
had comfort in the thane.

nu ist sîn künne hie gelegen,
now is his kin here laid,

daz beste daz er ie gewan.
the best that he ever won.

ôwê daz ich niht wenden kan
alas that I not avert can

dîne wunden unt dînen tôt,
thy wounds and thy death,

vil tugenthafter Gêrnôt:
very virtuous Gernot:

des muoz mir mîn leben leiden.
of-that must to-me my life grow-hateful.

ez het wol gescheiden
it had well parted

Kriemhilt Hagenen von in drin,
Kriemhild Hagen from them three,

niwan daz lützel wîbes sin
but that little woman's sense

die lenge für die spannen gât.
the length beyond the span goes.

an ir tumben herzen rât
in their foolish heart's counsel

sô hânt si sinne mêre
so have they senses more

danne iemen der ûf êre
than anyone who upon honor

sinne hurten kunde.
senses thrust could.

daz ist zuo dirre stunde
that is at this hour

an mîner triutinne schîn,
in my beloved evident,

daz si sô wîse wolde sîn,
that she so wise would be,

daz mit sinne ein lîhter man
that with sense a slight man

het ein bezzerz getân.»
had a better done.»

Dô hiez er Gêrnôten,
Then bade he Gernot,

den sculdehaften tôten,
the guilty dead-one,

wegen ûf mit handen,
lift up with hands,

der von allen schanden
who from all shames

het gewendet sînen muot.
had turned his spirit.

do gebôt iz der künec guot
then commanded it the king good

daz man in tragen solde dan.
that one him carry should thence.

wol gewahsen was der man
well grown was the man

an grœze und an lenge:
in greatness and in length:

diu tür wart in ze enge,
the door became to-them too narrow,

dâ man die tôten ûz truoc.
where one the dead out carried.

ê dô was er snel genuoc,
before then was he swift enough,

der edel unt der mære,
the noble and the famed,

swie swære ab er nu wære.
however heavy but he now were.

dô sin brâhten ûz der tür,
when they-him brought out-of the door,

zuo zim giengen dar für
thither to-him went there before

die êre gerenden vrouwen,
the honor desiring ladies,

die in dâ wolden schouwen.
who him there would behold.

ez wære in ê gezemen baz
it were to-them before befitted better

(von schulden wil ich sprechen daz),
(with cause will I say that),

dô er hete noh daz leben:
when he had still the life:

got der woldes in niht geben
God he would-it to-them not give

daz in daz lieb geschæhe
that to-them that joy happened

daz in deheiniu sæhe
that him any saw

bi gesundem sînem lîbe.
by sound his body.

er wart von manegem wîbe
he was by many-a woman

geklaget harte sêre.
lamented very sorely.

dane was et nu niht mêre
there was just now nothing more

niwan weinen unde klagen.
but weeping and lamenting.

die tumben, daz wil ich iu sagen,
the young, that will I you tell,

klageten mit den wîsen,
lamented with the wise,

die tôren mit den grîsen
the fools with the gray

klageten algemeine,
lamented all-together,

daz sich die mûwersteine
that themselves the wall-stones

möhten klieben her dan.
might cleave hither thence.

dô brâhte man den küenen man
then brought one the bold man

verrer an die wîte.
farther into the open.

dar nâch in kurzer zîte
there after in short time

dô vant man Rüedegêre,
then found one Rüedeger,

daz ein helt sô sêre
that a hero so sorely

zer werlde niemêr wart gekleit.
in-the world never-more was lamented.

an dem was mit wârheit
in him was with truth

verlorn der werlde wünne,
lost the world's delight,

daz ûz einem künne
that out-of one kin

sô vil êren nie verdarp
so much honor never perished

als dô der marcgrâve erstarp.
as when the margrave died.

Dietrich finds Rüedeger lying in his shield and laments the one man who kept faith with him in exile, who swore Etzel should hang him before Dietrich was taken, and who, with Helche's help, won him Etzel's favor. Etzel joins him: Rüedeger's faith bore him up like the wind a feather, and he never misled him. Dietrich asks Etzel to care for his dear kinswoman and Rüedeger's child, and Etzel promises to be as their father. Hildebrand, himself wounded by Hagen, faints lifting the body, and Etzel kneels to revive him; the whole land wails like cranes.

Nu lâzen sîn die swære,
Now let be the heaviness,

und sagen iu diu mære,
and tell you the tidings,

waz nu reite Dietrîch,
what now said Dietrich,

do er den margrâven rîch
when he the margrave rich

in sînem schilde ligen vant,
in his shield lie found,

er und meister Hildebrant.
he and master Hildebrand.

dô sprach der herre von Berne
then spoke the lord of Bern

«nu möht ich als gerne
«now might I as gladly

sîn vor zwelf jâren tôt.
be before twelve years dead.

du hâst mich lâzen in der nôt,
thou hast me left in the need,

daz mir bezzer wære begraben.
that to-me better were buried.

zuo wem sol ich nu trôst haben?
to whom shall I now comfort have?

mîn aller beste künne,
my of-all best kin,

mîn vreude und mîn wünne,
my joy and my delight,

ist an dir einem gelegen.
is on thee alone laid.

ez wart nie getriuwer degen,
there was never more-faithful thane,

und wæn ouch ûf der erde
and think-I also on the earth

mêr deheiner werde.
more none becomes.

daz tæte du mir vil wol schîn.
that did thou to-me very well evident.

do ich den vîanden mîn
when I the foes mine

muose rûmen mîniu lant,
must quit my lands,

die triuwe ich ninder dô vant
the faith I nowhere then found

wan an dir einem, Rüedegêr.
but in thee alone, Rüedeger.

Etzel der künec hêr
Etzel the king lordly

was mir sô vîentlîche gram,
was to-me so hostilely hostile,

daz ez niemen enzam,
that it no-one befitted,

der mir daz gehieze
who to-me that promised

daz er mich leben lieze.
that he me live let.

dô reit ich ûf den trôst dîn
then rode I upon the comfort thine

zuo den widerwinnen mîn.
to the adversaries mine.

dô lobtestu daz, Rüedegêr,
then vowedst-thou that, Rüedeger,

daz Etzel der künec hêr
that Etzel the king lordly

dih ê müese hâhen,
thee before must hang,

ê du mich liezest vâhen.
before thou me let seize.

do erwürbe du mir hulde,
then won thou for-me favor,

daz Etzel mîner schulde
that Etzel of-my guilt

alsô grôzer vergaz.
so great forgot.

mit triuwen tæte du daz.
with faith did thou that.

du hæte mîn ouh lougen
thou had of-me also denial

den die mich mit ir ougen
to-those who me with their eyes

bî dir vil dicke sâhen.
by thee very often saw.

ich was Etzeln nâhen,
I was to-Etzel near,

helt, in dîner huote,
hero, in thy keeping,

unz frou Helche diu vil guote,
until lady Helche the very good,

diu edele küneginne,
the noble queen,

an dir wart des inne
in thee became of-it aware

daz du mich enthielte in der nôt.
that thou me kept in the need.

der vrowen ir tugent daz gebôt
to-the lady her virtue that commanded

daz si sich immer mêre
that she herself ever more

begunde vlîzen sêre,
began to-strive sorely,

swie si daz bedæhte,
however she that considered,

daz si mich ze hulden bræhte,
that she me to favor brought,

mit dir, vil tugenthafter man.
with thee, very virtuous man.

allez trüege du daz an
all bore thou that on

hin ze Etzeln dem rîchen,
thither to Etzel the rich,

daz er genædeclîchen
that he graciously

in sîne hulde mich enpfie.
into his favor me received.

dar zuo verlieze du mich nie
there to forsook thou me never

mit triwen ûz den genâden dîn:
with faith out-of the graces thine:

swes mir unt den mannen mîn
whatever to-me and the men mine

gebrast in ellende,
lacked in exile,

dîn milte unt dîne hende
thy generosity and thy hands

tâten mir sîn alles buoz.
did to-me of-it all amends.

ôwê der mir dînen gruoz
alas he-who to-me thy greeting

sô verre nu gefrumet hât,
so far now removed has,

der hât mir allen mînen rât
he has of-me all my provision

ûz mîner kamere genomen.
out-of my chamber taken.

dîn sterben ist vil übele komen
thy dying is very ill come

mir vil ellendem man.
to-me very in-exile man.

got der hete wol getân,
God he had well done,

het er dich leben lâzen.»
had he thee live let.»

mit schrîen âne mâzen
with crying without measure

sô lûte erweinte Dietrîch,
so loudly wept Dietrich,

daz Etzel der künec rîch
that Etzel the king rich

dâ von vil sêre erschrahte,
there from very sorely started,

als er von sculden mahte.
as he with cause might.

Dô sprach der fürste rîche
Then spoke the prince rich

«jâ sol ich pillîche
«yea shall I fittingly

mit iu Rüedegêre klagen.
with you Rüedeger lament.

sîn triwe hât mich enbor getragen,
his faith has me aloft borne,

alsam die vedere tuot der wint.
just-as the feather does the wind.

ez enwart nie muoter kint
there was never mother's child

sô rehte gar untriuwelôs.
so rightly wholly unfaith-less.

ich wæn ouch künec ie verlôs
I think also king ever lost

deheinen küeneren man.
no bolder man.

sît ich sîn künde ie gewan,
since I his acquaintance ever won,

sô misseriet er mir nie.
so ill-counseled he me never.

swenn er an mîne sprâche gie,
whenever he to my speech went,

swes mich der helt denne bat,
whatever me the hero then bade,

daz muose ich leisten an der stat.
that must I perform on the spot.

daz ist nu zergangen:
that is now passed-away:

mîn herze deist bevangen
my heart that-is seized

mit maneger hande swære.
with many-a kind-of heaviness.

ob er noch lebendec wære,
if he still alive were,

sô wære er wol sô milte,
so were he well so generous,

daz in des niht bevilte,
that him of-it not too-much-seemed,

swaz tûsent künege möhten hân,
whatever thousand kings might have,

daz het er eine wol vertân.
that had he alone well spent.

ôwê daz niemen sterben mac
alas that no-one die may

unz im kumt sîn lester tac:
until to-him comes his last day:

sô wære ouch ich nu tôt gelegen,
so were also I now dead laid,

sît ich sô manegen tiwern degen
since I so many-a precious thane

hie tôten vor mir sihe.
here dead before me see.

si ligent rehte als ein vihe,
they lie right as a beast,

daz erbizzen hânt die lewen.
that bitten-to-death have the lions.

si mugen nu lîhte mir gedrewen,
they may now easily me threaten,

die mir ie wâren gram:
who to-me ever were hostile:

den pin ich allen worden zam.»
to-those am I to-all become tame.»

Dô sprach der herre Dietrich
Then spoke the lord Dietrich

«edel künec, verdenke dich
«noble king, bethink thyself

nâch dem grôzen dienste sîn
after the great service his

an der lieben nifteln mîn
on the dear niece mine

und an Rüedegêres kinde,
and on Rüedeger's child,

die in dînem hove gesinde
who in thy court household

dir zen êren wâren
to-thee to-the honor were

unt dir lobes vil gebâren.»
and to-thee of-praise much bore.»

dô sprach der Botelunges sun
then spoke the Botelung's son

«daz solt ich pillîche tuon,
«that should I fittingly do,

und bæt ir des niht, Dietrich.
and bade you of-it not, Dietrich.

si suln immer ane mich
they shall ever on me

gedingen, sam ich sî ir vater.»
hope, as-if I be their father.»

Hildebranden dô bater
Hildebrand then bade-he

daz er den helt guote
that he the hero good

hüebe ûz dem pluote.
lift out-of the blood.

wunt was selbe Hildebrant
wounded was himself Hildebrand

(daz tet des grimmen Hagenen hant):
(that did the grim Hagen's hand):

dô sich neigte der man,
when himself bent the man,

sîn wunde bluoten began.
his wound to-bleed began.

daz müete den helt mære:
that troubled the hero famed:

im was ein teil ze swære
to-him was a part too heavy

Rüedgêr der lobes rîche:
Rüedeger the of-praise rich:

er truoc in angestlîche.
he carried him anxiously.

do er in brâhte zuo der tür,
when he him brought to the door,

in kunde der helt niht derfür
him could the hero not out

vor unkreften bringen.
for weakness bring.

ez meht noch misselingen
it might still miscarry

mit solhem dienste einem man.
with such service to-a man.

der künec sah den recken an:
the king looked the warrior at:

dem was sîn kraft entwichen
to-him was his strength ebbed

und ouch diu varwe erblichen:
and also the color paled:

er seic zuo Rüedegêre.
he sank to Rüedeger.

des erkom vil sêre
of-that was-startled very sorely

der edel Bernære:
the noble Bernese:

ez was im harte swære.
it was to-him very heavy.

nâch wazzer man dô sande,
for water one then sent,

daz man Hildebrande
that one Hildebrand

sîner krefte hülfe wider.
of-his strength helped back.

der künec Etzel dô dernider
the king Etzel then down

zuo zim kniete in daz pluot:
thither to-him knelt into the blood:

do vergôz er den helt guot.
then poured-on he the hero good.

sich erscamte Hildebrant:
himself shamed Hildebrand:

sîn houbet ûf des küneges hant
his head upon the king's hand

vil harte sweizigez lac.
very much sweaty lay.

dem er dâ diente manegen tac,
whom he there served many-a day,

der diente im nu von schulden.
he served him now with cause.

er hete nâh sînen hulden
he had after his favor

vil dicke harte wol geriten:
very often very well ridden:

ez wære übele vermiten,
it were ill forgone,

daz Etzel hête getân.
what Etzel had done.

Hildebrant der bat dô lân
Hildebrand he bade then let

wîter offen den sal.
wider open the hall.

sich huop ungefüeger schal
itself raised monstrous clamor

hie ûze von dem mære,
here outside from the tidings,

do man sagete waz dâ wære.
when one told what there were.

Sine sûmten sich niht mêre.
They delayed themselves not more.

dô truoc man Rüedegêre,
then carried one Rüedeger,

vater aller tugende,
father of-all virtue,

daz in alter von der jugende
that to-him in-age from the youth

getriuwer niemen was bekomen.
more-faithful no-one was come.

dô wart swîgen gar benomen
then was silence wholly taken

vil maneger muoter kinde.
very many-a mother's child.

allez daz gesinde
all the household

mit ungelîchem munde
with unlike mouth

schrîen dô begunde.
to-cry then began.

si ruoften al gelîche,
they called all alike,

beide arme und rîche,
both poor and rich,

gar âne freudehaften sin,
wholly without joyful sense,

daz diu erde under in
that the earth under them

sich mehte haben ûf getân.
itself might have up opened.

meide wîp unde man
maidens women and men

die klageten Rüedegêre
they lamented Rüedeger

sô herzenlîchen sêre,
so heartfeltly sorely,

daz türne unde palas,
that towers and palace,

und swaz gemiuwers dâ was,
and whatever of-walls there was,

antwurte von dem schalle.
answered from the clamor.

der ougen gruntwalle
the eyes' deep-springs

von herzen dô den fluz truoc.
from hearts then the flood bore.

man sah dâ sinnelôs genuoc
one saw there senseless enough

vil der schœnen wîbe:
many of-the fair women:

diu wât von ir lîbe
the clothing from their body

was in zerizzen sêre.
was to-them torn sorely.

vil manec maget hêre
very many-a maiden lordly

von ir houbte brach daz hâr.
from her head broke the hair.

ir het der ungenâden vâr
to-her had of-the misfortunes' peril

ober hant gewunnen.
upper hand won.

mit pluote berunnen
with blood run-over

man manec antlütze vant:
one many-a face found:

dâ wart von maneger wîzen hant
there was by many-a white hand

gein herzen geswungen.
against hearts swung.

die alten zuo den jungen
the old to the young

wuoften alsô sêre,
wailed so sorely,

daz iz nimmer mêre
that it never more

wirt von liuten vernomen,
will-be by people heard,

als ob kraneche wæren komen
as if cranes were come

scrîende in daz rîche.
crying into the realm.

Etzel unt Dietrîche
Etzel and Dietrich

den wart gemêret dô ir leit
to-them was increased then their grief

mit schädelîcher wârheit.
with harmful truth.

Seventeen hundred of the best, Christians and heathens, are laid on biers, and eighty-six maidens reared by Helche come grieving: Herrat, her sister's child, Sieglind, Goldrun of France, Hildeburg of Normandy, Herlind of Greece, and Adelind of Pitten. The widows come, and all search the field for their dead. Dietrich and Hildebrand have the three kings coffined. Etzel faints over his wife and child, bleeding from ears and mouth; both are buried in silk, then Bloedelin and Rüedeger, the kings with Hagen, Volker, and Dankwart, and Hawart, Irinc, and Irnfrid.

Dô hiez man bâren zehant
Then bade one bier at-once

swaz man der besten dâ vant.
whatever one of-the best there found.

der wart ûz besundert
of-those was out separated

sibenzehen hundert
seventeen hundred

kristen unde heiden:
Christians and heathens:

die lieben zuo den leiden
the dear to the hateful

wurden gelegt ûf den rê.
were laid upon the bier.

swaz dâ was geklaget ê,
whatever there was lamented before,

daz was allez gar ein niht
that was all wholly a nothing

dâ wider und nu hie geschiht
there against and now here happens

von manegem edeln kinde.
from many-a noble child.

daz rîche hovegesinde,
the rich court-household,

mit jâmer âne wünne,
with sorrow without delight,

der hôhen künege künne,
of-the high kings' kin,

der kom dar mit leide
of-it came there with grief

wol sehs und ahzec meide,
full six and eighty maidens,

die vrou Helche het erzogen,
whom lady Helche had reared,

den ê ûffen regenbogen
for-whom before upon-the rainbow

mit freuden was gebouwen.
with joys was built.

wer mehte des getrouwen
who might that trust

daz si sô nider solden komen?
that they so low should come?

in was ir trôst gar benomen.
to-them was their comfort wholly taken.

Ein teil ich iu der nenne,
A part I you of-them name,

die ich von sage bekenne,
whom I by report know,

wande si an geschriben sint.
for they on written are.

dar gie vroun Helchen swester kint,
there went lady Helche's sister's child,

frou Herrât diu rîche.
lady Herrat the rich.

dô mêrt sich Dietrîche
then increased itself to-Dietrich

sîn ungefüege herzen sêr.
his monstrous heart's sorrow.

noch kom der hôchgeborner mêr:
yet came of-the high-born more:

des künec Nîtgêres kint,
the king Nitger's child,

diu minneclîche Sigelint.
the lovely Sieglind.

dar kom durch leide scouwe
there came for grief's sight

Goldrûn diu vrouwe,
Goldrun the lady,

eines küneges tohter hêr.
a king's daughter lordly.

der was geheizen Liudegêr
who was called Liudeger

und saz in Vrancrîche:
and sat in France:

dem hete minneclîche
to-him had lovingly

Helche erzogen sîn kint.
Helche reared his child.

mit der juncvrouwen sint
with the young-lady afterward

kômen Hildeburc und Herlint,
came Hildeburg and Herlind,

zweier rîchen fürsten kint.
of-two rich princes children.

Hildeburc diu scanden vrî
Hildeburg the of-shames free

was geborn von Normandî:
was born of Normandy:

Herlint was von Kriechen.
Herlind was from Greece.

von klage man vil der siechen
from lament one many of-the sick

under den vrouwen vant.
among the ladies found.

nâch den kom dô sâ zehant
after them came then straightway at-once

diu herzoginne Adelint,
the duchess Adelind,

des küenen Sintrames kint.
the bold Sintram's child.

den helt man wol erkande:
the hero one well knew:

er saz bî Ôsterlande.
he sat by Austria.

ein hûs an Unger marke stât:
a house on Hungary's march stands:

Püten noch den namen hât:
Pitten still the name has:

dâ wuohs von kinde diu magt,
there grew from child the maiden,

von der ich hie hân gesagt.
of whom I here have told.

Sine sint uns alle niht erkant,
They are to-us all not known,

die Helche zôch in Hiunen lant
whom Helche reared in Huns' land

und Kriemhilde kômen an.
and to-Kriemhild came on.

Etzeln man si sande dan
to-Etzel one them sent thence

und Helchen zen êren.
and to-Helche to-the honor.

niemen alsô hêren
no-one so lordly

man in allen landen vant,
one in all lands found,

dem Helchen tugende was bekant,
to-whom Helche's virtues was known,

er liez ir gerne dar sîn kint.
he let to-her gladly there his child.

wol ahzec grâven tohter sint
full eighty counts' daughters afterward

kômen zuo dem schalle.
came to the clamor.

die witwen kômen alle,
the widows came all,

der man und mâg dâ lâgen tôt.
whose husbands and kin there lay dead.

sich huop von klage diu meiste nôt
itself raised from lament the greatest need

die man zer werlde ie bevant.
that one in-the world ever found.

des wart daz Etzelen lant
of-that became the Etzel's land

allez vreuden lære.
all of-joys empty.

von disem grimmen mære
from these grim tidings

huop sich dar diu lantschaft,
raised itself there the country-folk,

mit vil klagelîcher kraft,
with very lamentable force,

beide spâte unde fruo.
both late and early.

daz liut seic allenthalben zuo:
the people sank on-all-sides to:

si giengen suochunde
they went seeking

ir friunde zuo der stunde
their friends at the hour

allenthalben ûf dem wal,
on-all-sides upon the slaughter-field,

vor dem hûse und in dem sal,
before the house and in the hall,

sam ze markte durch die krâmen.
as at market through the stalls.

der tôt het sînen sâmen
the death had his seed

gesæt vil wîten in diu lant.
sown very widely into the lands.

dô ieslîcher den sînen vant
when each the his found

swâ er nider was geslagen,
wherever he down was struck,

genuoge sah man dannen tragen
enough saw one thence carry

ir friunde ûz dem pluote.
their friends out-of the blood.

dô huoben vrouwen guote
then raised ladies good

ir klage zuo den stunden,
their lament at the hours,

sam sis ê nie begunden.
as-if they-it before never began.

Ir triuwe man bî jâmer vant.
Their faith one by sorrow found.

man sach von juncvrouwen hant
one saw by maidens' hand

und von manegem edeln wîbe
and by many-a noble woman

gebrochen von ir lîbe
torn from their body

manec wol gezieret kleit:
many-a well adorned dress:

sine wolden niht daz ir leit
they would not that their grief

dem golde gezæme.
to-the gold befitted.

swie rehte ungenæme
however rightly unpleasant

die tôten sîn den liuten,
the dead are to-the people,

küssen unde triuten
kiss and caress

sach man dâ manegen tôten
saw one there many-a dead-one

ze verhe verschrôten.
to-the life cut-down.

Erlæret was der palas,
Emptied was the palace,

der ê sô vol der veigen was.
that before so full of-the doomed was.

done kunde niemen trœsten
then could no-one comfort

die besten noch die bœsten.
the best nor the worst.

swaz iemen ê hât gekleit
whatever anyone before has lamented

oder von klage her geseit
or of lament hitherto said

oder noch geklagen künde,
or still lament could,

der klage daz urgründe
of-the lament the abyss

was allez ûf ein ander komen.
was all upon one another come.

dô het her Dietrich vernomen
then had sir Dietrich heard

der schœnen Herrâten munt:
the fair Herrat's mouth:

swie vil im leides wære kunt,
however much to-him of-grief were known,

idoch erbarmet in ir leit.
yet pitied him her grief.

si und ander manec meit
she and other many-a maiden

muosen tuon daz er gebôt:
must do what he commanded:

ein teil schiet er si von der nôt,
a part parted he them from the need,

er bat si leiten von dan.
he bade them lead from thence.

wie grôze ummuoze dô gewan
what great toil then won

her Dietrich unde Hildebrant!
sir Dietrich and Hildebrand!

si hiezen sarken sâ zehant
they bade coffin straightway at-once

die drîe künege rîche.
the three kings rich.

got lône Dietrîche
God reward Dietrich

daz er die triuwe ie gewan
that he the faith ever won

daz man si sunderte dan,
that one them separated thence,

die edeln unt die rîchen:
the noble and the rich:

daz tet man pillîchen.
that did one fittingly.

Der künec gie sâ zehant
The king went straightway at-once

da er sîn wîp ligen vant
where he his woman lie found

und sîn kint an dem rê.
and his child on the bier.

vor jâmer wart im alsô wê,
for sorrow became to-him so woe,

daz er viel in unmaht.
that he fell into swoon.

in het der jâmer dar zuo brâht
him had the sorrow there to brought

daz im zuo der stunde
that to-him at the hour

ûz ôren und ûz munde
out-of ears and out-of mouth

begunde bresten daz pluot.
began to-burst the blood.

sô sêre klagt der helt guot,
so sorely lamented the hero good,

daz ez ein grôz wunder was
that it a great wonder was

daz er der klage ie genas.
that he of-the lament ever survived.

wer kunde klage dâ gedagen?
who could lament there keep-silent?

si begunden alle mit im klagen,
they began all with him to-lament,

die den jâmer muosen schouwen.
who the sorrow must behold.

ritter unde vrouwen
knights and ladies

in jâmer klagelîche
in sorrow lamentably

bâten den künec rîche
bade the king rich

daz er den lîp iht sô verlür
that he the life not so lost

unt daz er bezzern trôst kür:
and that he better comfort chose:

daz wære in beidenthalben guot.
that were to-them on-both-sides good.

do getrôsten si dem helde den muot.
then comforted they to-the hero the spirit.

dô was bereitet in ein sarc,
then was prepared to-them a coffin,

der was wît unde starc,
that was wide and strong,

dâ man se in legen solde.
where one them in lay should.

ein pfellel von golde,
a silk of gold,

tiwer unde rîche,
precious and rich,

geworht vil spæhelîche,
wrought very artfully,

verre brâht ûz heiden lant,
far brought out-of heathen land,

dâ man si beide in want,
where one them both in wound,
beidiu sîn kint und sîn wîp.
both his child and his woman.
do bestatet man ir beider lîp
then buried one their both's body
nâch küneclîchen êren:
after kingly honors:
durch ir heil ze mêren
for their salvation to increase
si bâten got der sêle pflegen.
they bade God the souls tend.
sam tet man Blœdelîn den degen,
as did one Bloedelin the thane,
des werden Botelunges sun.
the worthy Botelung's son.
waz moht her Dietrich nu tuon,
what might sir Dietrich now do,
wan als iz triuwen tohte?
but as it faith befitted?
swaz man der vinden mohte,
whatever one of-them find might,
die messe solden singen,
who mass should sing,
die hiez er balde bringen:
those bade he quickly bring:
alsô kund erz dâ schaffen:
so could he-it there arrange:
den kristen ir pfaffen,
for-the Christians their priests,
den heiden der ouch den gezam.
for-the heathens those-who also them befitted.

dar nâch man dô zehant nam
there after one then at-once took

den guoten Rüedegêre,
the good Rüedeger,

mit dem vil michel êre
with whom very much honor

wart geleit in sîn grap.
was laid into his grave.

dô sah man manegen kriuzestap
then saw one many-a cross-staff

dâ den pfaffen an der hant:
there to-the priests in the hand:

swaz man ir under stôle vant,
whatever one of-them under stole found,

die bâten digelîche
they prayed earnestly

got von himelrîche
God from heaven

und sante Michahêle
and saint Michael

ze genâden ir aller sêle.
to grace of-them all souls.

Die dâ fürsten hiezen,
Those-who there princes were-called,

niht langer si die liezen,
not longer they them left,

sine bræhten si zer erde:
but-they brought them to-the earth:

die künege wurden werde
the kings were worthily

bestatet in manegem sarke.
buried in many-a coffin.

Hagene der starke
Hagen the strong

und sîn geselle Volkêr,
and his comrade Volker,

und Dancwart der recke hêr,
and Dankwart the warrior lordly,

die wurden dô alle drî
they were then all three

ir herren geleget nâhen bî.
to-their lords laid near by.

Hâwart der starke,
Hawart the strong,

der künec von Tenemarke,
the king of Denmark,

Îrinc und Irnfrit,
Irinc and Irnfrid,

die drî wurden ouch dâ mit
the three were also there with

bestatet hêrlîchen.
buried lordly.

die dar ûz andern rîchen
who there from other realms

zuo der hôhzît wâren komen,
to the feast were come,

der wart ouh dâ war genomen
of-them was also there heed taken

mit güetlîchen dingen:
with kindly things:

man îltes alle bringen,
one hastened-them all bring,

die kunden unt die geste,
the natives and the guests,

zir langen bettereste.
to-their long bed-rest.

After three days of burials, Etzel and Dietrich have the rest laid in one pit seven spear-shafts wide, with the nine thousand squires Gunther brought from the Rhine. Etzel, his warriors gone, will wear neither crown nor scepter and cares not when death takes him; Dietrich, weary, leans in a window. Hildebrand counsels leaving the ruined land with Lady Herrat. The armor and swords are kept, the orphans are to go home, and seven of Rüedeger's men take his sword and horse to Bechelaren. Swemmel and twelve men will bear the news and the armor to the Rhine.

Daz volc dô ruowens niht enpflac.
The folk then of-rest not took-care.

daz werte unz an den dritten tac,
that lasted until to the third day,

ê man begruob die hêren.
before one buried the lords.

ir müede muose mêren,
their weariness must increase,

ê di andern wurden begraben,
before the others were buried,

die muosen ouch ir reht haben.
they must also their right have.

Etzel unde Dietrich
Etzel and Dietrich

die berieten dô sich,
they took-counsel then themselves,

ez enkund nieman verenden,
it could no-one finish,

wolt man die ellenden
would one the exiles

alle sunder begraben:
all apart bury:

si müesen ein grab haben
they must one grave have

sô tief und alsô wît,
so deep and so wide,

daz man ze etslîcher zît
that one in some time

wol verenden kunde.
well finish could.

der künec scuof sâ ze stunde
the king ordered straightway at hour

daz die lantliute duo
that the country-folk then

griffen alle samt zuo
grasped all together to

und gruoben eine gruoben sît
and dug a pit afterward

siben sperschefte wît
seven spear-shafts wide

und alsô tief in di erde.
and so deep into the earth.

ich wæne immer werde
I think ever will-be

mit solhem jâmer mêr gegraben.
with such sorrow more dug.

die knehte wurden ûf erhaben,
the squires were up lifted,

daz gesinde von dem Rîne,
the household from the Rhine,

die Gunther unt die sîne
whom Gunther and the his

mit in brâhten in daz lant.
with them brought into the land.

niwen tûsent man der vant,
nine thousand men of-them found,

an den sich êrste huob diu nôt.
on whom itself first raised the need.

den liuten jâmer daz gebôt,
to-the people sorrow that commanded,

durch ir ellende
for their exile

sô wunden si die hende.
so wrung they the hands.

Man vant dâ veiger mêre.
One found there of-doomed more.

mit leide und ouch mit sêre,
with grief and also with sorrow,

als ich iu dicke hân geseit,
as I you often have said,

sô wurdens in daz grap geleit.
so were-they into the grave laid.

do si all ze stete wâren komen,
when they all to place were come,

dô wart êrste vernomen
then was first heard

von den die giengen von dem grabe
from those who went from the grave

diu aller meiste ungehabe,
the of-all greatest lamentation,

der si zeheinen stunden
which they at-any hours

dâ vor noch ie begunden.
there before yet ever began.

ez was ein grimmez sceiden
it was a grim parting

von kristen und von heiden.
of Christians and of heathens.

die klageten alsô sêre
they lamented so sorely

daz man immer mêre
that one ever more

dâ von mære sagen mac
there of tidings tell may

unz an den jungesten tac.
until to the last day.

Sît in freude niht gezam,
Since to-them joy not befitted,

niemen sandern war nam
no-one of-the-other heed took

der die noch lebende wâren.
of-those who still living were.

Etzeln man gebâren
Etzel one behave

vil ungüetlîche vant.
very unkindly found.

do er ze wedere sîner hant
when he to either his hand

der guoten recken niht ensach,
of-the good warriors none saw,

wider Dietrîch er dô sprach,
toward Dietrich he then spoke,

den fürsten von Berne,
the prince of Bern,

«jâ het ich noch vil gerne
«yea had I still very gladly

manegen des ich mich ânen muoz.
many-a-one whom I myself forgo must.

mir hât mîn ungelücke buoz
to-me has my misfortune riddance

aller freuden getân.»
of-all joys done.»

her Dietrich sprach «jâ sult ir lân
sir Dietrich spoke «yea shall you leave

iuwer grôz ungehaben.
your great grief.

sine sint niht alle noch begraben,
they are not all yet buried,

die iu ze dienste sint gewant:
who to-you to service are turned:

her künec, jâ mügt ir iuwer lant
sir king, yea may you your land

mit heleden wol besetzen.
with heroes well settle.

got mac iuch wol ergetzen
God may you well recompense

genædeclîch der leide.
graciously of-the grief.

ir habt doch noch uns beide,
you have yet still us both,

mich und Hildebrande,
me and Hildebrand,

bî iu in dem lande.»
by you in the land.»

«Waz hilfet daz?» sprach er dô.
«What helps that?» spoke he then.

«ine kunde nimmer werden vrô,
«I could never become glad,

und sold ich tûsent jâr leben.
and should I thousand years live.

wer kunde mir den muot gegeben
who could to-me the spirit give

oder wer möht mirz gerâten?
or who might to-me-it counsel?

die daz mit willen tâten,
those-who that with will did,

die sint leider gelegen tôt.
they are alas laid dead.

waz sol mir nu mîn golt rôt
what shall to-me now my gold red

oder deheiner slahte rîchtuom?
or of-any kind riches?

gewalt, werltlîcher ruom,
power, worldly fame,

daz ist an mir verdorben.
that is in me ruined.

mîne man sint erstorben,
my men are dead,

dar zuo kint unde wîp.
there to child and woman.

war zuo sol mir der lîp,
what for shall to-me the life,

zepter oder krône,
scepter or crown,

diu mir ê vil schône
which to-me before very fairly

stuont in allen mînen tagen?
stood in all my days?

dine wil ich nimmer mêr getragen:
them will I never more wear:

vreude, êre und werdez leben
joy, honor and worthy life

daz wil ih allez ûf geben,
that will I all up give,

und wilz allez nider legen,
and will-it all down lay,

des ich zer werlde solde pflegen,
of-which I in-the world should take-care,

sît ez mir allez missezimt.
since it to-me all misbefits.

ine ruoch wenn mich der tôt nimt.»
I-not care when me the death takes.»

Si wolden trœsten im den muot.
They would comfort to-him the spirit.

daz enwas dehein guot,
that was no good,

wand er hete ze vil verlorn.
for he had too much lost.

über in hête gesworn
over him had sworn

sînes lîbes unheil:
of-his body's misfortune:

im was der aller meiste teil
to-him was the of-all greatest part

sîner ungenâden komen,
of-his misfortunes come,

wand ez im allez was benomen
for it from-him all was taken

daz er des besten ie gewan.
what he of-the best ever won.

der künec weinen began
the king to-weep began

sam do ers aller êrste pflac.
as when he-it of-all first did.

ein teil ouch nidere gelac
a part also down lay

hern Dietrîches vester muot.
sir Dietrich's firm spirit.

vor müede der helt guot
for weariness the hero good

sich in ein venster leinte nider.
himself into a window leaned down.

Hildebrant der sprach sider
Hildebrand he spoke afterward

dem herren Dietrîche zuo
the lord Dietrich to

«herre, wes beit ir nu?
«lord, for-what wait you now?

dâ rât ich», sprach der wîgant,
there counsel I», spoke the fighter,

«sît verwüestet ist daz lant,
«since laid-waste is the land,

waz suln wir nu dar inne?
what shall we now there in?

daz Helche diu küneginne
that Helche the queen

iu gab, vil edel Dietrîch,
you gave, very noble Dietrich,

daz dunket mich nu rætlîch,
that seems me now advisable,

dâ mit rûme wir daz lant.
there with quit we the land.

iuwer ellen und mîn hant
your valor and my hand

diu bêde suln berâten
the both shall provide-for

mîne vrouwen Herrâten,
my lady Herrat,

wand wir sîn swuoren beide.
for we of-it swore both.

wir suln durch unser leide
we shall for our grief

der triuwen niht vergezzen.
the faith not forget.

swie nider sî gesezzen
however low be seated

iuwer freude unt ouch diu mîn,
your joy and also the mine,

doch suln wir immer die sîn
yet shall we ever those be

die stæter triuwe künnen pflegen.»
who steadfast faith can keep.»

«daz tuon ich gerne», sprach der degen.
«that do I gladly», spoke the thane.

«wie sol ich von disen leiden
«how shall I from these griefs

mit êren mîn gescheiden,
with honor me part,

sît ich den schaden hân genomen?
since I the harm have taken?

ôwê waz leider mære komen
alas what grievous tidings come

muoz hin wider ûf den wegen,
must thither back upon the ways,

von danne ein ieslîcher degen
from whence every single thane

reit zuo dirre hôhzît!
rode to this feast!

ach wê waz guoter swerte lît
ah woe what of-good swords lies

herrenlôs in disem sal,
lordless in this hall,

prünne und helme âne zal!
mail-shirts and helmets without number!

dine wizze wir wem nu geben,
them-not know we whom now give,

sît daz die niht solden leben,
since that those not should live,

die si dâ ê hânt getragen.
who them there before have borne.

gote wil ihz immer klagen,
to-God will I-it ever lament,

daz ich sô manegen werden man
that I so many-a worthy man

muoz tôten hie belîben lân.»
must dead here remain let.»

«wir suln», sprach dô Hildebrant,
«we shall», spoke then Hildebrand,

«der guoten recken gewant
«the good warriors' raiment

heizen waschen ûz dem pluot
bid wash out-of the blood

unt diu zieren wâfen guot
and the splendid weapons good

heizen wol behalten.
bid well keep.

wil Etzel witze walten,
(if)-will Etzel wits wield,

ez mac im lîhte noch gefrumen
it may to-him easily yet profit

und ze grôzen staten kumen.»
and to great stead come.»

Dô der künec daz vernam,
When the king that heard,

den rât er für guot nam
the counsel he for good took

und ensûmte sich niht mêre:
and delayed himself not more:

nâch ir beider lêre
after their both's teaching

hiez er behalten daz gewant,
bade he keep the raiment,

unt diu besten swert diu man vant
and the best swords which one found

hiez er dô behalten tragen.
bade he then kept carry.

her Dietrich sprach «ich wil iu sagen,
sir Dietrich spoke «I will you tell,

vil edel künec rîche,
very noble king rich,

welt ir nu lobelîche
(if)-will you now praiseworthily

tuon nâch grôzem leide,
do after great grief,

sô râten wir iu beide,
so counsel we you both,

ich und meister Hildebrant,
I and master Hildebrand,

daz ir in ieslîchez lant
that you into each land

sult wider den weisen senden
shall back the orphans send

(des enlât iuch niemen wenden)
(from-that let you no-one turn)

swaz von ir lande her sî komen,
whatever from their land hither be come,

die der tôt hie hât genomen.
whom the death here has taken.

des gewinnet ir noch êre:
of-that win you yet honor:

die jungen mugen iu mêre
the young may to-you more

gefrumen denn diu sarwât
profit than the armor

die hie der tôt erlœset hât.»
which here the death released has.»

Dô sprach der Botelunges sun
Then spoke the Botelung's son

«daz sol ich pillîche tuon
«that shall I fittingly do

und volges iu von rehte.»
and follow-it you by right.»

die Rüedegêres knehte
the Rüedeger's squires

hiez man alrêrste bringen.
bade one first-of-all bring.

den sah man zähere dringen
to-them saw one tears press

ûz den ougen zetal.
out-of the eyes down.

zuo Etzeln kômen für den sal
to Etzel came before the hall

siben und niht mêre.
seven and not more.

dô sprach der künec hêre
then spoke the king lordly

«swie ir nu welt, her Dietrîch,
«however you now will, sir Dietrich,

so enbiet der marcgrâvinne rîch
so announce to-the margravine rich

hin ze Bechelâren.»
thither to Bechelaren.»

alle die dâ wâren,
all who there were,

den beswæret iz den muot:
to-them grieved it the spirit:

idoch tet iz der helt guot.
yet did it the hero good.

Rüedegêrs swert und sîn gewant
Rüedeger's sword and his raiment

und sîn ros, dâ man daz vant,
and his horse, where one that found,

hiez man balde bringen.
bade one quickly bring.

wie möhte misselingen
how might miscarry

harter frouwen lîbe,
harder to-lady's body,

danne sîme wîbe,
than to-his woman,

dô man ir sagte mære
when one her told tidings

wie iz ergangen wære.
how it come-about were.

Dô sprach meister Hildebrant
Then spoke master Hildebrand

«wer sol in Burgonden lant
«who shall into Burgundy land

dirre mære bote wesen,
of-these tidings messenger be,

sît ir niemen ist genesen,
since of-them no-one is survived,

der ritter noch der knehte?
of-the knights nor of-the squires?

der künec sol von rehte
the king shall by right

sîn selbes boten über Rîn
his own messenger over Rhine

senden.» «daz sî Swemmelîn»,
send.» «that be Swemmel»,

sprach der künec alzehant:
spoke the king at-once:

«dem sint die wege wol bekant.»
«to-him are the ways well known.»

dar zuo scuof man zwelf man,
there to ordered one twelve men,

die daz gewæfen fuorten dan
who the armor led thence

mit dem videlære,
with the fiddler,

daz die helede mære
that the heroes famed

in sturme hêten getragen,
in assault had borne,

unt daz die boten solden sagen
and that the messengers should tell

dâ ze Rîne mære
there at Rhine tidings

wie ez geschehen wære.
how it happened were.

die herren wurden des enein,
the lords became of-that agreed,

daz man der boten al dehein
that one of-the messengers at-all none

lieze niht belîben,
let not remain,

man sande si ir wîben
one sent them to-their women

mit den mæren heim ze lande,
with the tidings home to land,

und ouch mit dem gewande
and also with the raiment

daz die veigen truogen ê.
which the doomed bore before.

ir friunden wart dort als wê
to-their friends became there as woe

sam disen ê was von klage.
as to-these before was from lament.

jâ mohtens immer dem tage
yea might-they ever the day

fluochen, daz diu wirtschaft
curse, that the feast

alsô maneges heldes kraft
so many-a hero's strength

mit tôde het geletzet.
with death had injured.

si wurden gar entsetzet
they were wholly deprived

swaz si freuden solden hân,
whatever they of-joys should have,

den ez kunt wart getân.
to-whom it known was made.

Etzel sends Swemmel the fiddler with Rüedeger's men to the Rhine, to tell Brunhild and Uote how it all came about and that he is innocent. Dietrich bids them keep the news from the people on the road and from Gotelind and Dietlind: if asked, they are to say Etzel keeps Rüedeger to escort the guests to the Rhine, and that Dietrich will come soon. They leave the dying on dripping biers. At Vienna the duchess Isalde learns the truth and the city fills with lament, but from Traismauer on no one learns it until they reach Bechelaren.

Die dâ solden an den Rîn,
Those-who there should to the Rhine,
mit den gie dô Swemmelîn
with them went then Swemmel
für Etzeln den künec stân.
before Etzel the king stand.
er sprach «nu sult ir niht lân,
he spoke «now shall you not leave,
irn saget besceidenlîchen
but-you tell discreetly
Prünhilt der rîchen
Brunhild the rich
wie ez allez sî ergangen,
how it all be come-about,
und wie mir sî bevangen
and how to-me be seized
mîn lant mit grôzem sêre,
my land with great sorrow,
unt daz nie geste mêre
and that never guests more
getâten wirt sô leide.
did host so grievous.

des ensuln si doch beide
for-that shall they yet both

niht engelten», sprach der guote,
not pay», spoke the good-one,

«Prünhilt und frou Uote.»
«Brunhild and lady Uote.»

er sprach «irn sult ouch niht verdagen,
he spoke «you shall also not conceal,

mîn unschult sult ir in sagen,
my innocence shall you to-them tell,

den besten dâ ze Rîne,
the best there at Rhine,

daz ich noch die mîne
that I nor the mine

nie verdienten sölhe nôt;
never earned such need;

wand ihz in güetlîche erbôt,
for I-it to-them kindly offered,

unt tet vil willeclîche daz:
and did very willingly that:

dâ wider zeigten si mir haz.
there against showed they to-me hate.

swaz ich des scaden hân genomen,
whatever I of-the harm have taken,

daz ist ouch in ze schaden komen.»
that is also to-them to harm come.»

Dô sprach der videlære
Then spoke the fiddler

«als unwerdiu mære
«so unworthy tidings

diu gefuort ich noh nie mêre.
those carried I yet never more.

der lande vreude und êre,
of-the lands joy and honor,

diu ist nu gar verswunden.
that is now wholly vanished.

die ie mit wünne kunden
those-who ever with delight could

wol leben unde schône,
well live and fairly,

die dicke under krône
who often under crown

mit vreuden sint gegangen,
with joys are gone,

von den wirt mir enpfangen
by them is from-me received

sô swinde disiu boteschaft,
so swift this message,

daz ich in mîner sinne kraft
that I in my senses' strength

hân michel sorge dar zuo
have great care there to

wie ih den mæren sô getuo
how I with-the tidings so do

daz ich müge den lîp bewarn.»
that I may the life keep.»

der künec sprach «jâ sult ir varn
the king spoke «yea shall you go

mit den von Bechelâren.»
with those of Bechelaren.»

bereit si schiere wâren.
ready they quickly were.

Dô sprach der herre Dietrîch
Then spoke the lord Dietrich

«mære als unfriuntlîch
«tidings so unfriendly

diu muoz ich leider senden.
those must I alas send.

ôwê möht ichz erwenden
alas might I-it avert

mit mîn selbes lîbe!
with my own body!

daz ich dem edeln wîbe
that I to-the noble woman

ir herzen leit enbieten sol,
her heart's grief announce shall,

dâ mit enwirt mir nimmer wol.»
there with becomes to-me never well.»

«ir sult heln», sprach Dietrîch,
«you shall conceal», spoke Dietrich,

«disiu mære jæmerlîch
«these tidings piteous

allenthalben ûf den strâzen.
on-all-sides upon the roads.

ir sult daz liut niht lâzen
you shall the people not let

des schaden werden innen,
of-the harm become aware,

sô ir nu sceidet hinnen:
when you now part hence:

sô müeten si iuch ze sêre.
so would-trouble they you too sorely.

ir sult von Rüedegêre
you shall of Rüedeger

niemen sagen sînen tôt.
to-no-one tell his death.

ez wirt doch ein lange werndiu nôt,
it becomes yet a long lasting need,

swenne iz in rehte wirt geseit:
when it to-them rightly is told:

sô müezen si mit arebeit
so must they with toil

dar nâch weinen manegen tac.
there after weep many-a day.

diu mîn ie güetlîche pflac,
she-who me ever kindly tended,

der sult ir sagen den dienest mîn,
to-her shall you tell the service mine,

unt daz ich immer welle sîn
and that I ever will be

swie mir gebiutet Götelint
however to-me commands Gotelind

und ouch des marcgrâven kint,
and also the margrave's child,

mîn niftel diu hêre.
my niece the lordly.

vrâgen si von Rüedegêre,
(if)-ask they of Rüedeger,

wenne er ze hûse welle komen,
when he to house will come,

sô sagt, ir habt von im vernomen,
so say, you have of him heard,

der künec well in niht komen lân,
the king will him not come let,

unt daz sî dâ von getân
and that be there of done

daz er dâ müeze bîten
that he there must wait

unz daz die geste rîten
until that the guests ride

mit ir gezoge an den Rîn:
with their train to the Rhine:

der geleite müez er sîn:
the escort must he be:

daz ist in mînem sinne;
that is in my mind;

sô wil ich die marcgrâvinne
so will I the margravine

mit samt Rüedegêre sehen.
with together Rüedeger see.

ir sult ouch Dietlinde jehen,
you shall also to-Dietlind avow,

unt ob des niht müge sîn,
and if that not may be,

sô welle ich doch die nifteln mîn
so will I yet the niece mine

gesehen in vil kurzen tagen.»
see in very short days.»

in ir herzen was begraben
in their heart was buried

den boten manec swære.
to-the messengers many-a heaviness.

dô lie der Bernære
then let the Bernese

mit manegen herzeleiden
with many heart-griefs

die boten von im scheiden.
the messengers from him part.

Ouch liezen si dâ hinder in,
Also left they there behind them,

des sult ir vil gewis sîn,
of-that shall you very certain be,

zergangene wünne,
vanished delight,

vil jâmerhaftez künne,
very sorrowful kin,

friunde unde mâge
friends and kinsmen

in des tôdes lâge,
in the death's lair,

sümelîche die noch lebten
some who still lived

und mit dem tôde strebten,
and with the death strove,

mit triefenden bâren,
with dripping biers,

die noch niht tôt wâren:
who still not dead were:

die andern wâren nu begraben.
the others were now buried.

des muos ir herze jâmer haben.
of-that must their heart sorrow have.

dâ liezens ouch den marcman.
there left-they also the march-horse.

man zôch schrîende dan
one drew crying thence

vil lûte âne mâze
very loudly without measure

sîn ross ûf der strâze,
his horse upon the road,

dâ si dâ riten über lant.
where they there rode over land.

mit vrâge ez niemen ervant
with asking it no-one learned

rehte waz in wære.
rightly what to-them were.

jâ heten si diu mære
yea had they the tidings

gesagt vil ofte gerne:
told very often gladly:

dô het inz der von Berne
then had them-it he of Bern

verboten ieslîchem knehte:
forbidden every squire:

dô liezen siz von rehte.
then left they-it by right.

niemen wart iz noh geseit,
to-no-one was it yet told,

unz daz in Ôsterrîche reit
until that into Austria rode

daz Rüedegêrs gesinde.
the Rüedeger's household.

von maneger muoter kinde
from many-a mother's child

wart gâhen durh gewonheit
was hastening by custom

dâ der videlære reit:
where the fiddler rode:

si wânden der mære
they thought of-the tidings

daz iz der künec wære
that it the king were

oder Rüedegêr der rîche.
or Rüedeger the rich.

daz volc gemeinlîche
the folk commonly

vrâgte dô den spileman
asked then the minstrel

«wâ habt ir den künec lân?»
«where have you the king left?»

Dô sprach der videlære
Then spoke the fiddler

daz der herre wære
that the lord were

noch in sînem lande
still in his land

mit manegem wîgande.
with many-a fighter.

daz geloubten die dâ wolden.
that believed those-who there would.

die mære vrâgen solden,
the tidings ask should,

der was sô vil noh bî dem wege,
of-them was so many still by the way,

daz beidiu brücke unde stege
that both bridge and footbridges

allez was bestanden.
all was occupied.

von hiunischen landen
from Hunnish lands

si ze Wiene kômen in die stat.
they to Vienna came into the city.

mit zühten si ze hûse bat
with courtesies they to house bade

ein vrouwe, saz dar inne,
a lady, sat there inside,

ein rîche herzoginne,
a rich duchess,

Isalde, ein vil schœniu maget,
Isalde, a very fair maiden,

dine kund iz werden niht verdaget:
them could it be not concealed:

an den boten siz ervant.
in the messengers she-it learned.

si wart sô jâmerc zehant
she became so grieved at-once

und sô trûrec gemuot
and so sad minded

daz ir von herzen daz pluot
that to-her from heart the blood

dræte ûz ir munde.
burst out-of her mouth.

ach wê wie übele gunde
ah woe how ill granted

si den boten dirre sage!
she the messengers of-this tale!

von der juncvrouwen klage
from the maiden's lament

erschal ez sît vil wîten.
rang it afterward very widely.

man begunde an allen sîten
one began on all sides

in der stat über al
in the city over all

üeben alsô grôzen schal,
practice so great clamor,

die armen mit den rîchen,
the poor with the rich,

daz sich diu klage gelîchen
that itself the lament compare

wol mohte, sô si jâhen,
well might, as they said,

die dort die klage sâhen
who there the lament saw

und ouch mit klage schieden dan.
and also with lament parted thence.

diu klage ir helfe dâ gewan,
the lament its help there won,

daz si nu fuor mit breiten scarn.
that it now went with broad troops.

die boten kundenz niht bewarn,
the messengers could-it not prevent,

do erscal ditze mære
then rang this tale

under die burgære
among the townsfolk

und under der koufliute kint.
and among the merchants' children.

diu guote stat diu wart sint
the good city that became afterward

elliu eines tôdes vol.
all of-one death full.

dô liezen in die boten wol
then let them the messengers well

von Wiene zogen ûz der stete.
from Vienna go out-of the city.

hern Dietrîches bete
sir Dietrich's request

unsanfte leisten si dar an:
ungently performed they there in:

wande in dô vil manec man
for them then very many-a man

widerreit ûf der strâze,
rode-against upon the road,

der in gelîcher mâze
who in like measure

muose helfen tragen ir leit.
must help bear their grief.

sus fuorens in der arbeit
thus went-they in the toil

unz hin ze Treisenmûre.
until thither to Traismauer.

ritter noch gebûre
knight nor peasant

nie bevant diu mære,
never found-out the tidings,

unz daz der videlære
until that the fiddler

ze Bechelâren zuo reit.
to Bechelaren to rode.

niht nâch ir gewonheit
not after their custom

noch nâch ir altem rehte
nor after their old right

die Rüedegêres knehte
the Rüedeger's squires

riten in die marke.
rode into the march.

jâ müete si vil starke
yea troubled them very strongly

daz siz verswîgen solden
that they-it keep-silent should

daz si doch sagen wolden.
what they yet tell would.

Gotelind's maidens take the riders for Rüedeger, but only seven men come, leading his gear and his horse Boymunt, none singing. Gotelind dreamed her husband gray, his household wet with snow and rain, her head shorn, and a dark room he locked them both in; her daughter dreamed his horse drank and sank. The best of the messengers brings Etzel's and Rüedeger's greetings, says the margrave is on campaign, and promises Dietrich within twelve days. The daughter asks after Kriemhild's welcome and Giselher, who would wed her: all were welcomed, and Giselher will make her a queen.

Ûf bî Tuonouwe
Up by Danube

het Götelint diu vrouwe
had Gotelind the lady

die strâze lange wol bekant,
the road long well known,

die boten fuoren in ir lant,
the messengers went into her land,

dâ si dâ vor vil dicke ir man
where she there before very often her husband

sah rîten vrœlîche dan.
saw ride joyfully thence.

mit der marcgrâvinne
with the margravine

gestanden an die zinne
stood at the battlement

was vil manec schœniu meit.
was very many-a fair maiden.

rîten in grôzer arbeit
ride in great toil

si dô die boten sâhen
they then the messengers saw

dem hûse alsô nâhen
to-the house so near

daz si einen stoub erkanden
that they a dust recognized

in Rüedegêres landen
in Rüedeger's lands

nâch alter gewonheit.
after old custom.

dô sprach vil manec schœne meit
then spoke very many-a fair maiden

«lop sî dir, herre trâhtîn.
«praise be to-thee, lord God.

nu schouwet, vrouwe marcgrâvin.
now look, lady margravine.

wir sehen dort liute rîten
we see there people ride

von den hôhgezîten:
from the feasts:

dâ kumt unser herre.»
there comes our lord.»

der trôst was in vil verre
the comfort was to-them very far

zen Hiunen bestanden
at-the Huns remained

von Gêrnôtes handen,
by Gernot's hands,

und vil ir herzen wünne.
and very their heart's delight.

der lantliute künne
of-the country-folk kin

kômen niwan siben man
came only seven men

von dem marcgrâven dan:
from the margrave thence:

die fuorten sîn gezouwe.
who led his gear.

Gotelint diu vrouwe
Gotelind the lady

het ouch diu mære nu vernomen.
had also the tidings now heard.

si was zuo ir tohter komen
she was to her daughter come

unde wânden beide
and thought both

lieb âne leide
joy without grief

enpfâhen, als ê dicke,
receive, as before often,

von lieben ougen blicke.
from dear eyes' glance.

dô enpfiengens niwan herzeleit
then received-they only heart's-grief

und lange wernde arbeit.
and long lasting toil.

Die knappen wâren in den siten,
The squires were in the customs,

sô si ze Bechelâren riten,
when they to Bechelaren rode,

daz si fuoren alle
that they went all

mit vrœlîchem schalle:
with joyful clamor:

dem was iz nu vil ungelîch:
to-that was it now very unlike:

ez hete sich ir ieslîch
there had himself of-them each

nider gedrucket ûf daz marc:
down pressed upon the horse:

wand ir jâmer was sô starc
for their sorrow was so strong

daz si niht singen kunden
that they not sing could

sam ê ze manegen stunden.
as before at many hours.

Rüedegêrs ors Boymunt,
Rüedeger's steed Boymunt,

wider sehende an der stunt
back looking at the hour

gie ez dem knehte an der hant.
went it to-the squire at the hand.

der site was an im bekant,
the custom was in it known,

so ez sînes herren niht ensach,
when it its master not saw,

daz ez vil often zoum brach
that it very often bridle broke

und lief wider ûf den wegen.
and ran back upon the ways.

nu was er leider gelegen,
now was he alas laid-low,

der ez hete dar geriten
who it had there ridden

und dicke drûfe gestriten
and often thereon fought

als von rehte ein edel man.
as by right a noble man.

sîn tohter goumen began
his daughter to-heed began

der knappen gebâre:
of-the squires' bearing:

do ersûfte si zewâre.
then sighed she truly.

Dô sprach daz Rüedegêres kint
Then spoke the Rüedeger's child

«vil liebiu muoter Gotelint,
«very dear mother Gotelind,

daz ist doch selten geschehen
that is yet seldom happened

daz ich sô wênic habe gesehen
that I so little have seen

her bî mînen zîten
hither in my times

mîns vater boten rîten.
my father's messengers ride.

swenne ab si her quâmen,
whenever but they hither came,

wie wol wir daz vernâmen
how well we that perceived

daz si wâren wol gemuot!
that they were well minded!

wær et diu hôhzîte guot
were just the feast good

gewesen mîner vrouwen!
been to-my lady!

des mac ich übel getrouwen.»
that may I ill trust.»

dô sprach diu alte marcgravîn
then spoke the old margravine

«ruocht es got, sô sol si sîn
«(if)-deigns of-it God, so shall it be

in alln unscedelîch ergân;
to all harmlessly come-about;

niwan daz ich von troumen hân
but that I from dreams have

erliten vil der sêre.
suffered much of-the sorrow.

dînen vater Rüedegêre
thy father Rüedeger

sah ich hînte gar grâ.
saw I tonight wholly gray.

sîn gesinde bî im dâ
his household by him there

daz het bevallen gar ein snê:
that had fallen-on wholly a snow:

von einem regene wart in wê; 2890
from a rain became to-them woe;

dâ von wurden se alle naz.
there from became they all wet.

du solt, tohter, gelouben daz,
thou shalt, daughter, believe that,

mîn houbet was von hâre blôz,
my head was of hair bare,

daz ich eines hâres grôz
that I of-a hair's size

mînes vahses niht entruoc. 2895
of-my tresses none bore.

ein gadem vinster genuoc,
a chamber dark enough,

dâ hiez er mich in gân.
there bade he me in go.

ich vant in innerthalben stân:
I found him inside stand:

zuo slôz er dô die tür:
to locked he then the door:

nie mêr kômen wir dar für. 2900
never more came we there out.

ungerne was ich drinne.»
unwillingly was I therein.»

sus sprach diu marcgrâvinne.
thus spoke the margravine.

Dô sprach Rüedegêres kint
Then spoke Rüedeger's child

«liebiu muoter, troume sint
«dear mother, dreams are

sümelîche senfte, dandern starc.
some gentle, the-others strong.

ich sah mînes vater marc
I saw my father's horse

in troume sêre springen
in dream sorely leap

und lûte an im erklingen
and loudly on him ring

sîne covertiure silberîn.
his trappings silvern.

nu merke, liebiu muoter mîn.
now mark, dear mother mine.

eines wazzers ez getranc:
of-a water it drank:

sâ ze stete ez versanc.»
straightway at place it sank.»

ein ander si niht mêre
one another they not more

sageten, wan mit sêre
said, but with sorrow

si giengen beide ensamt dan.
they went both together thence.

dô wârn, als ich gesaget hân,
then were, as I said have,

die boten komen sô nâhen,
the messengers come so near,

daz si al die liute sâhen.
that they all the people saw.

zir marstalle si dô riten.
to-their stable they then rode.

ninder nâh ir alten siten
nowhere after their old customs

gebârten dô die knehte:
behaved then the squires:

aber nâh des hoves rehte
but after the court's right

die ritter giengen gegen in
the knights went toward them

und bâten willekomen sîn
and bade welcome be

den Etzeln videlære.
the Etzel's fiddler.

wol gruozten helde mære
well greeted heroes famed

die boten von der Hiunen lant:
the messengers from the Huns' land:

dar nâch enpfiengen si zehant
there after received they at-once

ir herren ingesinde.
their lord's household.

mit gedruhten worten swinde
with pressed words swift

hôrt man si antwurte pflegen.
heard one them answer give.

jâ was iz allez gelegen,
yea was it all laid-low,

dâ von si heten hôhen muot.
there from they had high spirit.

jane kunden si dehein guot
yea could they no good

von der wirtschaft gesagen.
of the feast tell.

harnasch sah man si tragen
harness saw one them carry

die knehte von den rossen dan.
the squires from the horses thence.

Gotelint erblihte sân
Gotelind paled straightway

der knappen gebâre:
at-the squires' bearing:

sine wart in manegem jâre
she was in many-a year

nie sô trûrec gemuot.
never so sad minded.

si sprach «ich næme dehein guot
she spoke «I would-take no good

niht für diu mære,
not for the tidings,

daz ich weste wie in wære.»
that I knew how to-them were.»

Dô sprach der beste under in
Then spoke the best among them

«iu enbiutet triuwe bernden sin,
«to-you announces faith bearing mind,

genâde und michel êre,
grace and great honor,

Etzel der künec hêre,
Etzel the king lordly,

und holden willen stæte:
and kind will steadfast:

der werke und ouch der ræte
of-the deeds and also of-the counsels

sî er iu immer bereit.
be he to-you ever ready.

daz wizzet mit der wârheit.
that know with the truth.

ouch enbiutet iu mîn herre,
also announces to-you my lord,

ern kœme iu nie sô verre,
he came from-you never so far,

ern wære iu doch mit triuwen bî.
but-he were to-you yet with faith by.

ir sult wizzen daz er sî
you shall know that he be

iu holt vor allen wîben,
to-you favorable before all women,

und wil alsô belîben
and will so remain

an sînen jungesten tac.
until his last day.

er enweiz niht ob er komen mac
he knows not whether he come may

wider heim in langer zît.
back home in long time.

der künec im allez ane lît,
the king him all on lies,

er leite im eine hervart
he laid for-him an expedition

diu lange ê gesprochen wart:
which long before spoken was:

die ist mîn herre nu gevarn.»
that is my lord now gone.»

si sprah «nu müeze in got bewarn
she spoke «now may him God guard

und allez himelische her.
and all heavenly host.

er var lant oder mer,
he go land or sea,

swelhen ende er kêre,
whatever end he turn,

durch sîns gewaltes êre
for his power's honor

müeze in Krist behüeten,
may him Christ protect,

daz Etzeln vînde wüeten
that Etzel's foes rage

mir niht enbünne mînes man.»
to-me not begrudge my husband.»

diu maget dô vrâgen began
the maiden then to-ask began

«saget mir, boten guote,
«tell me, messengers good,

wie ist nu sô ze muote
how is now so at spirit

mînem vater Rüedegêre?
my father Rüedeger?

daz müet mich harte sêre,
that troubles me very sorely,

wand mir ze vorderst,» sprach diu meit,
for to-me at first,» spoke the maiden,

«diu mære ie wurden geseit,
«the tidings ever were told,

swenne er sande in sîn lant.
whenever he sent into his land.

sô zornec ich in nie bevant,
so angry I him never found,

mir enkœmen sîniu mære.
but-to-me came his tidings.

von schulden ist mir swære.»
with cause is to-me heavy.»

diu magt dô weinen began:
the maiden then to-weep began:

dô sach si ir muoter an,
then looked she her mother at,

und erweinten dô beide.
and wept then both.

ich wæne si der leide
I think them of-the grief

ermante dô ir herze:
reminded then their heart:

in nâhete grôzer smerze.
to-them neared great pain.

Der bote sprach «lât iuwer klagen:
The messenger spoke «let your lamenting:

ich sol iu mêr mære sagen,
I shall you more tidings tell,

diu iu vil friuntlîche
which to-you very friendlily

von dem herren Dietrîche
from the lord Dietrich

sint enboten in daz lant.
are announced into the land.

uns gebôt der wîgant
us commanded the fighter

bî den sînen hulden,
by the his favor,

daz wir von wâren schulden
that we with true cause

iu sageten den dienest sîn.
to-you told the service his.

er enbiut iu, edel marcgrâvîn,
he announces you, noble margravine,

liebe unde allez guot,
love and all good,

triuwe unde stæten muot:
faith and steadfast spirit:

irn dürft ouch des niht vrâgen
you need also of-that not ask

ob iu under iuwern mâgen
whether to-you among your kin

holder ie würde man:
kinder ever became man:

und heizet iuch daz wizzen lân
and bids you that know let

(daz suln wir iu, vrouwe, sagen)
(that shall we to-you, lady, tell)

daz er iuch inre zwelf tagen
that he you within twelve days

wil hie ze Bechelâren sehen.»
will here at Bechelaren see.»

«daz wolde got, meht ez geschehen,»
«that would God, might it happen,»

sprach diu marcgrâvinne.
spoke the margravine.

«von allem mînem sinne
«from all my mind

vreutes harte sich mîn muot.»
rejoiced very itself my spirit.»

dô sprach diu junge maget guot
then spoke the young maiden good

«sagt uns der mære mêre,
«tell us of-the tidings more,

wie Kriemhilt diu hêre
how Kriemhild the lordly

enpfienge ir bruoder und ouch ir man:
received her brother and also her husband:

oder wie was der gruoz getân
or how was the greeting done

den si sprach gein Hagene?
which she spoke toward Hagen?

wie gebârt si gegen dem degene
how behaved she toward the thane

oder gein Gunthêre?
or toward Gunther?

ob si noh iht sêre
whether she still anything sorely

zurnde hin zin beiden:
was-angry thither to-them both:

oder wie ist daz gescheiden?»
or how is that parted?»

Der bote sprach «diu künegin
The messenger spoke «the queen

gie mit freuden gegen in
went with joys toward them

und enpfie si minneclîche:
and received them lovingly:

si tet dem wol gelîche
she did to-that well like

daz si in holt wære.
that she to-them favorable were.

Etzel der künec mære
Etzel the king famed

der enpfie die herren alle sô
he received the lords all so

sam er ir kumens wære vrô,
as-if he of-their coming were glad,

er und alle sîne man.
he and all his men.

nieman ich dâ gesehen hân
no-one I there seen have

der in trüege deheinen haz.»
who to-them bore any hate.»

si sprach «nu saget mir, umbe waz
she spoke «now tell me, for what

lie daz der künec Gîselhêr
left that the king Giselher

daz mir der junge fürste hêr
that to-me the young prince lordly

her wider bî iu niht enbôt?
hither back by you not announced?

der vrâge mich twinget nôt:
of-the question me forces need:

sît er mir niht enboten hât,
since he to-me nothing announced has,

ich fürhte, swi ez dar umbe stât,
I fear, however it there about stands,

ich gesehe in nimmer mêr.
I see him never more.

jâ sagte mir der künec hêr,
yea told me the king lordly,

er wolde mich ze trûte hân.»
he would me to beloved have.»

«die rede sult ir, vrouwe, lân.
«the speech shall you, lady, leave.

wir liezen in vil wol gesunt.
we left him very well sound.

si koment her in kurzer stunt
they come hither in short while

(daz wizzet, edel marcgrâvîn),
(that know, noble margravine),

so si wider rîtent an den Rîn.
when they back ride to the Rhine.

dar umbe sult ir sorgen niht,
there about shall you care not,

der künec iuch vil gerne siht,
the king you very gladly sees,

swenn er nu rîtet in sîn lant:
when he now rides into his land:

sô wil er iuch, vrouwe, alzehant
so will he you, lady, at-once

mit im füeren über Rîn:
with him lead over Rhine:

dâ sult ir küneginne sîn.»
there shall you queen be.»

XVI · THE TRUTH TOLD AT BECHELAREN

A squire breaks into wailing, and Swemmel tells Gotelind that Rüedeger and Gernot slew each other. Mother and daughter fall senseless and are doused with water; Dietlind laments that Lady Honor has lost her bearer and that Dietrich would have saved her father if anyone could. Swemmel lays all on Kriemhild, now dead herself, and promises Etzel's care. The bloodied armor is carried in, Gotelind tears her clothes, and Dietlind sends word to Brunhild and Uote of her betrothal to Giselher. The messengers ride for Passau, whose Bishop Pilgrim is the Burgundians' uncle.

Dirre lügelîchen mære
These lying tidings

ze schermen in ir swære,
to shield in their heaviness,

daz tet ir einem alsô wê,
that did of-them one so woe,

daz er niht langer mohte mê
that he not longer might more

verdulden in sînem herzen
endure in his heart

den schaden unt den smerzen.
the harm and the pain.

im erweinten dougen,
to-him wept-out the-eyes,

swie gern ers hete lougen.
however gladly he-it had denied.

dar nâch erweinte ir mêre.
there after wept of-them more.

diu marcgrâvinne hêre
the margravine lordly

ir trähene nider vliezen sach.
her tears down flow saw.

ir tohter dô zehant sprach
her daughter then at-once spoke

«ach wê, vil liebiu muoter mîn,
«ah woe, very dear mother mine,

ich wæn wir gar gescheiden sîn
I think we wholly parted are

von freude und ouch von wünne.
from joy and also from delight.

mîn vrouwe hât ir künne
my lady has her kin

leider vil übel enpfangen.
alas very ill received.

ez ist uns übel ergangen:
it is to-us ill come-about:

wir megen wol weinen von rehter nôt:
we may well weep from right need:

si und mîn vater sint wætlîch tôt.»
they and my father are likely dead.»

Ir einem, dô si daz gesprach,
Of-them one, when she that said,

ein wuof ûz sînem halse brach,
a wail out-of his throat broke,

mit zuo getânem munde:
with to closed mouth:

er wânde iz dâ ze stunde
he thought it there at hour

dâ mit verheln möhte.
there with conceal might.

neheinem herze ez tôhte
to-no heart it availed

daz daz verswîgen kunde:
that that keep-silent could:

dô brach ûz sînem munde
then broke out-of his mouth

daz scrîen mit dem pluote.
the crying with the blood.

dô der knappe guote
when the squire good

âne danc sô lûte erscrê,
without thanks so loudly cried-out,

dô wart den andern sô wê
then became to-the others so woe

daz si erweinten al gelîche.
that they wept all alike.

diu marcgrâvinne rîche
the margravine rich

sprach «ôwê mir, armez wîp,
spoke «alas me, wretched woman,

daz ich ie gewan den lîp.
that I ever won the life.

waz ich nu verlorn hân
what I now lost have

der vreuden der ich hete wân!
of-the joys of-which I had hope!

diu muoz nu mit dem leide mîn
that must now with the grief mine

gar von mir gescheiden sîn.
wholly from me parted be.

ir boten, durch iuwer triuwe
you messengers, for your faith

lât mih niht in der riuwe,
let me not in the grief,

ine wizze von schulden umbe waz.
unless-I know with cause for what.

sagt mir bescheidenlîche daz,
tell me discreetly that,

wie schiedet ir von mînem man?»
how parted you from my husband?»

dô muost diu lüge ein ende hân.
then must the lie an end have.

Dô sprach der videlære,
Then spoke the fiddler,

Swemmelîn der mære,
Swemmel the famed,

«vrowe, wir wolden iuch verdagen
«lady, we would from-you conceal

daz man iu doch muoz sagen,
what one to-you yet must tell,

wand ez nieman verheln kunde.
for it no-one conceal could.

irn geseht nâch dirre stunde
you see after this hour

den marcgrâven Rüedegêre
the margrave Rüedeger

lebendec nimmer mêre.»
living never more.»

vil lûte hôrt man si dô klagen
very loudly heard one them then lament

«herre, wer hât in erslagen?»
«lord, who has him slain?»

er sprach «daz tet her Gêrnôt:
he spoke «that did sir Gernot:

si sluogen beide ein ander tôt.»
they slew both one another dead.»

dô scrê diu muoter unt diu meit.
then cried the mother and the maiden.

wart ie nâch friunden mêr gekleit,
was ever after friends more lamented,

daz enist mir niht bekant.
that is to-me not known.

swaz man bî in liute vant,
whatever one by them people found,

oder sît kom zuo dem schalle,
or afterward came to the clamor,

die erwuoften alsam alle,
they wailed likewise all,

daz zen Hiunen umb der helde tôt
that at-the Huns for the heroes' death

wart nie grœzer ê diu nôt.
was never greater before the need.

Von dem jâmer alsô vesten
From the sorrow so firm

der marcgrâvinne bresten
to-the margravine burst

begund von munde daz pluot,
began from mouth the blood,

und ouch ir edeln tohter guot:
and also her noble daughter good:

si vielen beide in unkraft,
they fell both into swoon,

sô daz ir zühte meisterschaft
so that their courtesy's mastery

vergaz vil gar der sinne.
forgot very wholly the senses.

die liute wâren inne
the people were aware

worden wol der wârheit.
become well of-the truth.

swaz in mære ie wart geseit,
whatever to-them of-tidings ever was told,

des gesazt si ditze mære
from-that set them this tale

ûz freude in alle swære.
out-of joy into all heaviness.

ir herzen jâmer wart sô grôz
their heart's sorrow became so great

daz man mit prunnen si vergôz
that one with well-water them poured-over

und nazte se undern ougen.
and wetted them under-the eyes.

ir lîp begunde lougen
their body began to-deny

ob si rehte sinne ie gewan.
whether they right senses ever won.

daz beweinte wîp unde man
that bewept woman and man

und alle die dâ wâren
and all who there were

in der stat ze Bechelâren.
in the city at Bechelaren.

Von den andern man si truoc.
From the others one them carried.

dô wârn nôthaft genuoc
then were in-need enough

beide marcgrâvinne.
both margravines.

si lâgen in unsinne:
they lay in madness:

man hôrte unrehte lûte
one heard wrongly loudly

haben nâch ir trûte
behave after their beloved

Gotelint die rîchen.
Gotelind the rich.

vil erbärmeclîchen
very piteously

sprach diu tohter ir beider
spoke the daughter of-them both

«ach ach unde leider
«ah ah and alas

wirt nu meide nimmer mêre.
becomes now maidens never more.

wâ wil mîn vrou Êre
where will my lady Honor

belîben in dem rîche,
remain in the realm,

sît alsô jæmerlîche
since so piteously

die êre tragenden sint gelegen?
the honor bearing-ones are laid-low?

wer sol si danne widerwegen,
who shall her then counterweigh,

swenne ir gesîget diu kraft?
when to-her sinks the strength?

des hete gar die meisterschaft
of-that had wholly the mastery

mîn lieber vater Rüedegêr.
my dear father Rüedeger.

vrou Êre diu wirt nimmer mêr
lady Honor she becomes never more

mit solhem wunsche getragen,
with such perfection borne,

als er si truoc bî sînen tagen.
as he her bore in his days.

der tôt der hât die unzuht,
the death he has the rudeness,

daz er niemen deheine fluht
that he to-no-one any flight

zuo sînen friunden haben lât,
to his friends have lets,

swenne iz an die rede gât
whenever it to the speech goes

daz er entwiche gerne.
that he escaped gladly.

jâ het der von Berne
yea had he of Bern

mir wol genert den vater mîn,
for-me well saved the father mine,

möht iemen dem tôde wider sîn.»
might anyone to-the death against be.»

Dô sprach der videlære
Then spoke the fiddler

«elliu unser mære
«all our tidings

sint iu von sinnen wol bekant.
are to-you by senses well known.

die von Amelunge lant
those of Amelung land

die sint alle samt tôt.
they are all together dead.

jâ genas mit grôzer nôt
yea survived with great need

iuwer neve her Dietrîch:
your kinsman sir Dietrich:

und hete man den künec rîch
and had one the king rich

Etzeln zuo dem strîte lân,
Etzel to the battle let,

den müese wir ouh vlorn hân.»
him must we also lost have.»

si sprach «nu sagt mir, Swemmelîn,
she spoke «now tell me, Swemmel,

wie kom daz der vater mîn
how came that the father mine

zurnde wider Gêrnôten,
was-angry against Gernot,

sô manegen bouc rôten
so many-a ring red

sô wir in gâben hier enlant,
as we to-him gave here in-land,

und in dem willen er si vant?
and in the will he them found?

jâ was ez in beiden
yea was it to-them both

niht guot daz iemen scheiden
not good that anyone part

si mit râte solde,
them with counsel should,

der triuwe haben wolde.»
who faith have would.»

Er sprach «magt vil hêre,
He spoke «maiden very lordly,

daz entet niemen mêre
that did no-one more

wan der küneginne lîp.
but the queen's body.

des hât man unde wîp
for-that have man and woman

engolten alsô wîten,
paid so widely,

daz von den êrsten zîten
that from the first times

unz an den jungesten tac
until to the last day

nimmer mêre werden mac
never more become may

gerâten alsô swinder rât.
counseled so fierce counsel.

vil kleine ez si gefrumt hât:
very little it her profited has:

wand si ligt selbe drumbe tôt,
for she lies herself there-for dead,

von der diu lange werndiu nôt
from whom the long lasting need

gescach in Hiunen rîche.
happened in Huns' realm.

si ligent al gelîche
they lie all alike

die uns dâ vreude solden geben.
who to-us there joy should give.

doch megt ir, vrouwe, noch geleben
yet may you, lady, still live

vil manegen vrœlîchen tac.
very many-a joyful day.

swaz iuwerr vreuden an den lac
whatever of-your joys on them lay

die zen Hiunen sint erslagen,
who at-the Huns are slain,

die müezt ir alle verklagen,
them must you all cease-lamenting,

wand got der weisen vater ist.
for God of-the orphans father is.

frowe, ih rât iu ân argen list
lady, I counsel you without evil cunning

und ûf mîne triuwe,
and upon my faith,

daz ir iuch iuwerr riuwe
that you yourself of-your grief

mâzet unde solher klage.
moderate and of-such lament.

der künec giht, alle die tage
the king says, all the days

die in got noch leben lât,
which him God still live lets,

er welle iu scaffen den rât
he will for-you make the provision

den iu schüefe Rüedegêr.»
which for-you made Rüedeger.»

der edel marcgrâve hêr
the noble margrave lordly

mit siuften vol durchbrach ir klage.
with sighs full broke-through her lament.

dô was eroffent gar diu sage,
then was opened wholly the tale,

wie ez allez was ergân.
how it all was come-about.

die knehte wolden daz niht lân,
the squires would that not leave,

sine trüegen Rüedegêrs gewant,
but-they bore Rüedeger's raiment,

swaz sîn was hin heim gesant,
whatever his was thither home sent,

dâ manz behalten solde.
where one-it keep should.

swer daz dô scouwen wolde,
whoever that then behold would,

der sach dâ pluotegen glanz.
he saw there bloody gleam.

dâ ê die ringe wâren ganz,
where before the rings were whole,

daz was nu dürkel unde scart,
that was now pierced and notched,

dar inne ir trôst erslagen wart
there in their comfort slain was

dem Rüedegêres wîbe
to-the Rüedeger's woman

und ander manegem lîbe.
and other many-a body.

Nu huob sich êrste sunder nôt.
Now raised itself first apart need.

den gesten niemen niht enbôt,
to-the guests no-one nothing offered,

wederz wazzer noh den wîn.
neither water nor the wine.

«wie lange welle wir hie sîn?»
«how long will we here be?»

sprach der videlære:
spoke the fiddler:

«ez ist in solher swære
«it is in such heaviness

diu edele marcgrâvinne,
the noble margravine,

daz si vor unsinne
that she for madness

ez niemen wol erbieten mac.»
it to-no-one well offer may.»

daz volc dâ anders niht enpflac
the folk there otherwise not did

in der burc über al:
in the castle over all:

daz hûs allenthalben schal
the house on-all-sides rang

und ouch der stein dar under.
and also the stone there under.

ouch hôrte man besunder
also heard one apart

in der stat ze Bechelâren
in the city at Bechelaren

die liute alsô gebâren
the people so behave

als si des nôt ane gie.
as them of-that need on went.

diu marcgrâvinne niht enlie,
the margravine not left,

sin endet mit jâmer daz ir was.
but-she ended with sorrow what to-her was.

wunder ist daz si ie genas
wonder is that she ever survived

den tac vol an daz ende.
the day full to the end.

ez heten ir selber hende
it had her own hands

den lîp der wât gemachet blôz.
the body of-the clothing made bare.

nie wart jâmer alsô grôz,
never was sorrow so great,

sô man mahte kiesen dâ.
as one might see there.

diu mære ouch fuogten anderswâ
the tidings also caused elsewhere

daz maneges herzen brunnen
that many-a heart's springs

mit trähen ûz ougen runnen.
with tears out-of eyes ran.

Diu frouwe senelîche bat
The lady longingly bade

herbergen in die stat
lodge in the city

Etzeln boten güetlîche.
Etzel's messengers kindly.

der marcgrâvinne rîche
to-the margravine rich

ir sinne dô vil gar gebrast,
her senses then very wholly failed,

daz si den friunt noch den gast
that she the friend nor the guest

noch niemen erkande.
nor no-one recognized.

dô wolden von ir lande
then would from her land

die boten ûf an den Rîn.
the messengers up to the Rhine.

dô hete diu junge marcgrâvîn
then had the young margravine

ein teil noch ir sinne:
a part still of-her senses:

friwentlîche minne
friendly love

enbôt si Prünhilden,
announced she to-Brunhild,

der edeln unt der milden:
the noble and the generous:

si enbôt ouch daz froun Uoten
she announced also that to-lady Uote

umbe Gîselher den guoten,
about Giselher the good,

wie si im gevestent wære,
how she to-him betrothed were,

und mit welher swære
and with what heaviness

daz allez ende hât genomen;
that all end has taken;

ez möht in immer wirs sîn komen:
it might to-them ever worse be come:

si enbôt ir ouch daz Gêrnôt
she announced to-her also that Gernot

ir vater het erslagen tôt.
her father had slain dead.

Urloup die boten nâmen dan.
Leave the messengers took thence.

Swämmel rîten dô began
Swemmel to-ride then began

dâ er sîne wege vant,
where he his ways found,

ûf in der Beyer lant:
up into the Bavarians' land:

want dâ gie sîn strâze hin.
for there went his road away.

zwiscen Tuonouwe unt dem In
between Danube and the Inn

noch ein altiu burc stât:
still an old castle stands:

Pazzouwe si den namen hât:
Passau it the name has:

dâ saz ein rîche bischof:
there sat a rich bishop:

sîn lop, sîn êre, sîn hof
his praise, his honor, his court

wâren wîten bekant.
were widely known.

der was Pilgrim genant:
he was Pilgrim named:

dem kômen disiu mære.
to-him came these tidings.

die stolzen Burgondære
the proud Burgundians

wâren sîner swester kint.
were his sister's children.

vil wol erfuor er daz sint,
very well learned he that afterward,

wie ez den wîganden
how it to-the fighters

ergie in Hiunen landen.
went in Huns' lands.

Pilgrim sends his men to welcome his sister's children and is told they are all slain; Swemmel then tells him how. He curses the feast Etzel began and has masses sung throughout the city. Kriemhild, he says, should have spared Giselher and Gernot, since Hagen slew Siegfried, and the Nibelungs' gold and their own arrogance were their ruin. He bids Uote and the queen lament in measure and Gunther's men raise Gunther's little son, and charges Swemmel to return so that he may have it all written down. In Bavaria the margrave Else says his slain brother is avenged.

Die boten riten über daz In. 3305
The messengers rode over the Inn.

die liute liefen vor in hin
the people ran before them away

und wolden sagen in den hof
and would tell into the court

daz der guote bischof
that the good bishop

sîne neven solde enpfâhen.
his nephews should receive.

dine wâren niht sô nâhen 3310
they were not so near

als er des hête gedanc:
as he of-that had thought:

ez wart vil maneges tages lanc,
it became very many-a day long,

daz er si sît nie gesach.
that he them afterward never saw.

zuo den rittern er dô sprach
to the knights he then spoke

«nu sult ir alle gâhen 3315
«now shall you all hasten

und mîne friwende enpfâhen.
and my friends receive.

ein ieslîch mîn ambetman,
every single my officer,

der mir deheines guotes gan,
who to-me any good grants,

der enpfâhe mîner swester kint:
he receive my sister's children:

unt die mit in komen sint,
and who with them come are,

den lât niht gebresten.»
to-them let not lack.»

jâ möht er sînen gesten
yea might he his guests

sanfte nahtselde geben:
easily night-lodging give:

er wesse niht daz ir leben
he knew not that their life

zen Hiunen ende het genomen.
at-the Huns end had taken.

wære im doch ir einer komen,
were to-him yet of-them one come,

im wære immer deste baz.
to-him were ever the better.

sciere sagete man im daz,
quickly told one him that,

daz si wæren alle erslagen.
that they were all slain.

daz mære kunde im niht behagen,
the tidings could him not please,

ez dûhte in gar unglouplich:
it seemed him wholly unbelievable:

idoch bedâht er des sich,
yet bethought he of-that himself,

daz erz gelouben wolde.
that he-it believe would.

dô scuof er daz man solde
then ordered he that one should

den boten scaffen ir gemach.
for-the messengers make their ease.

mit grôzem jâmer er dô sprach
with great sorrow he then spoke

«Nu lît zen Hiunen erslagen
«Now lies at-the Huns slain

diu vreude die ich wânde haben
the joy which I thought have

an den verhmâgen mîn.
in the blood-kin mine.

des muoz ich immer trûrec sîn,
of-that must I ever sad be,

die wîle ich nu geleben mac,
the while I now live may,

unz an mînen endes tac.
until to my end's day.

ich gedâhtes vil wol sît.
I thought-it very well afterward.

vervluochet sî diu hôhzît,
cursed be the feast,

daz ir Etzel ie began,
that it Etzel ever began,

dâ von sô manec werder man
there from so many-a worthy man

sô jæmerlîch ist tôt gelegen.»
so piteously is dead laid.»

er sprach «himelischer degen,
he spoke «heavenly thane,

wie hâstu alsô zuo mir getân?»
how hast-thou so to me done?»

dâ kom dar zuo zim gegân
there came there to him going

Swämmel der videlære.
Swemmel the fiddler.

nâch gruoze er in der mære
after greeting he him of-the tidings

vrâgen dô begunde.
to-ask then began.

er sagte im, als er kunde,
he told him, as he could,

wie ez allez was geschehen,
how it all was happened,

wand er het ez wol gesehen.
for he had it well seen.

Do erweinte der bischof:
Then wept the bishop:

über allen sînen hof
over all his court

was vil grôziu ungehabe.
was very great grief.

die pfaffen muosen lâzen abe
the priests must leave off

durch klage vil ir tagezît:
for lament much of-their hours:

want dâ weinten wider strît
for there wept in rivalry

die leien mit den pfaffen.
the laymen with the priests.

dar nâch begunde scaffen
there after began to-arrange

der guote pischof Pilgerîn
the good bishop Pilgrim

daz si ir klagen liezen sîn.
that they their lamenting let be.

«ich kan mich des versinnen,
«I can myself of-that bethink,

möht ich si wider gewinnen
might I them back win

beidiu mit weinen und mit klagen,
both with weeping and with lamenting,

ich enwolde nimmer gedagen,
I would never keep-silent,

unz mir mîner swester kint,
until to-me my sister's children,

die mir sô jæmerlîche sint
who to-me so piteously are

in Etzelen lande
in Etzel's land

mit manegem wîgande
with many-a fighter

in guoten triuwen erslagen,
in good faith slain,

die ich nimmer kan verklagen,
whom I never can cease-lamenting,

müesen alle werden wider.»
must all become back.»

dô sande er allenthalben sider
then sent he on-all-sides afterward

nâch münechen und nâch pfaffen:
for monks and for priests:

der herre begunde ez scaffen
the lord began it to-arrange

nâch cristenlîchem orden,
after Christian order,

den die dâ wârn für worden,
for-those who there were forth passed,

die priester ir messe singen.
the priests their mass sing.

die glocken hôrt man klingen
the bells heard one ring

allenthalben in der stat
on-all-sides in the city

ze den münstern, als der bischof bat:
at the minsters, as the bishop bade:

ze dem opfer was dô grôz gedranc.
at the offering was then great throng.

der bischof ouh selbe sanc
the bishop also himself sang

gote von himele ze êren,
to-God from heaven to honor,

der cristen heil ze mêren
of-the Christians' salvation to increase

unt ze helfe ir sêle die dâ wâren tôt.
and to help their souls who there were dead.

der bischof leit vor jâmer nôt.
the bishop suffered for sorrow need.

Dô dâ gote gedienet wart,
When there God served was,

die boten wolden ûf ir vart
the messengers would upon their journey

aldâ zehant rîten.
there at-once ride.

«ir sult noh langer pîten,»
«you shall still longer wait,»

sprach zuo zin ein kappellân.
spoke to them a chaplain.

«ir sult zuo mînem herren gân:
«you shall to my lord go:

der bat mich iu sagen daz.
he bade me you tell that.

er wil wæne ich etewaz
he will think I something

bî iu enbieten an den Rîn
by you send to the Rhine

froun Uoten, der swester sîn,
to-lady Uote, the sister his,

umbe ir grôze swære.»
about her great heaviness.»

dô gie der videlære
then went the fiddler

für den guoten bischof.
before the good bishop.

er sprach «und ist Etzeln hof
he spoke «if is Etzel's court

mit sölher nôt zergangen,
with such need perished,

sô hât vil übele enpfangen
so has very ill received

Kriemhilt, diu niftel mîn,
Kriemhild, the niece mine,

ir bruoder unt die recken sîn.
her brothers and the warriors his.

si möhte baz hân getân
she might better have done

und hete doch genesen lân
and had yet survive let

Gîselher und Gêrnôt.
Giselher and Gernot.

die ir Sîfriden sluogen tôt,
who to-her Siegfried slew dead,

und hetens die engolten,
if had-it those paid,

sô wær sis unbescholten:
so were she-it unreproached:

wande in sluoc doh Hagene.
for him slew yet Hagen.

des habe wir ze klagene
of-that have we to lament

nâch friwenden immer mêr genuoc.
after friends ever more enough.

daz in sîn muoter ie getruoc,
that him his mother ever bore,

daz müeze gote sîn gekleit,
that may to-God be lamented,

daz sus lange werndiu leit
that such long lasting griefs

und alsô grimmiu mære
and so grim tidings

und ouch sô vil der swære
and also so much of-the heaviness

von im ist erstanden
from him is arisen

sô wîten in den landen.
so widely in the lands.

Swämmel, sagt der swester mîn,
Swemmel, tell the sister mine,

daz si ir klagen lâze sîn.
that she her lamenting let be.

si wæren doch dâ heime tôt.
they were yet there at-home dead.

der Nibelunge golt rôt,
the Nibelungs' gold red,

hêten si daz vermiten,
had they that forgone,

sô möhten si wol sîn geriten
so might they well have ridden

zir swester mit ir hulden.
to-their sister with her favor.

von ir selber schulden
by their own guilt

und von ir starken übermuot
and by their strong arrogance

sô habe wir die recken guot
so have we the warriors good

verlorn al gelîche
lost all alike

in Etzelen rîche.
in Etzel's realm.

und saget der küneginne
and tell the queen

daz ich von mînem sinne
that I from my mind

ir niht bezzers râten kan,
her nothing better counsel can,

wande ich ir wol guotes gan,
for I her well good grant,

daz si klage ze mâzen.
that she lament in measure.

man muoz die varen lâzen,
one must those go let,

die uns tägelîch der tôt nimt;
whom us daily the death takes;

wande im anders niht enzimt
for him otherwise nothing befits

wan scheiden liep mit sêre.
but parting love with sorrow.

ez enist niht anders mêre.
it is not otherwise more.

und saget ouch Guntheres man,
and tell also Gunther's men,

daz si gedenken wol dar an
that they think well there on

wie ir der künec ie pflac
how them the king ever tended

mit ganzen êren manegen tac,
with whole honors many-a day,

und daz si tuon ir triuwe scîn
and that they make their faith evident

und in bevolhen lâzen sîn
and to-them commended let be

daz sîn vil wênege kint,
that his very little child,

des doh nu diu erbe sint,
whose yet now the inheritances are,

unt den ziehen ze einem man:
and him rear to a man:

des müezens immer êre hân.
of-that must-they ever honor have.

Swämmel, lobt an mîne hant,
Swemmel, vow into my hand,

so ir wider rîtet durh diu lant,
when you back ride through the lands,

des pitte ich, friwent, daz ir
of-that bid I, friend, that you

danne kêret her ze mir.
then turn hither to me.

ez ensol niht sô belîben:
it shall not so remain:

ich wilz heizen scrîben,
I will-it bid write,

die stürme unt die grôzen nôt,
the assaults and the great need,

oder wie si sîn beliben tôt,
or how they are remained dead,

wie ez sich huop und wie ez quam
how it itself raised and how it came

und wie ez allez ende nam.
and how it all end took.

swaz ir des wâren habt gesehen,
whatever you of-it true have seen,

des sult ir danne mir verjehen. 3470
that shall you then to-me declare.

dar zuo wil ich vrâgen
there to will I ask

von ieslîches mâgen,
of each-one's kin,

ez sî wîp oder man,
it be woman or man,

swer iht dervon gesagen kan.
whoever anything there-of tell can.

dar umbe sende ich nu zehant 3475
there for send I now at-once

mîne boten in Hiunen lant:
my messengers into Huns' land:

dâ vinde ich wol diu mære;
there find I well the tidings;

wand iz vil übel wære,
for it very ill were,

ob ez behalten würde niht.
if it kept were not.

ez ist diu grœzeste geschiht 3480
it is the greatest event

diu zer werlde ie geschach.»
that in-the world ever happened.»

Swämmel zehant sprach
Swemmel at-once spoke

«swes ir, herre, an mich gert,
«whatever you, lord, of me desire,

des sult ir werden gewert.»
that shall you be granted.»

Die boten riten balde dan.
The messengers rode quickly thence.

dô hiez der bischof sîne man
then bade the bishop his men

si beleiten ûf den wegen
them escort upon the ways

sô verre und er ir mohte pflegen
so far as he them might tend

mit spîse und mit gewarheit.
with food and with safe-conduct.

swer in in Beyern widerreit,
whoever them in Bavaria rode-against,

von den wart in niht getân
by those was to-them nothing done

(daz muost man durh ir herren lân),
(that must one for their lord leave),

wan daz si in ir gebe gâben.
but that they to-them their gifts gave.

dô kêrten si durh Swâben
then turned they through Swabia

mit disen mæren an den Rîn,
with these tidings to the Rhine,

Swämmel unt die gesellen sîn.
Swemmel and the companions his.

Dô Swämmel ûf durch Beyern reit,
When Swemmel up through Bavaria rode,

dô wurden ouch von im geseit
then were also by him told

diu mære bî den strâzen:
the tidings by the roads:

wie kunde er daz gelâzen,
how could he that leave,

ern sagt die jâmerbæren nôt,
but-he told the grievous need,

und wie si wærn beliben tôt
and how they were remained dead

alle dâ zer hôhgezît?
all there at-the feast?

dô wurden disiu mære sît
then were these tidings afterward

dem herren Elsen geseit.
to-the lord Else told.

der sprach «ez solt mir wesen leit:
he spoke «it should to-me be grievous:

des enkan ez aber niht gesîn.
that can it but not be.

daz sie ie kômen über Rîn,
that they ever came over Rhine,

daz wil ich immer gote klagen.
that will I ever to-God lament.

mîn bruoder wart mir erslagen
my brother was from-me slain

von ir hovereise hie:
on their court-journey here:

daz ich doh verdiente nie;
which I yet earned never;

des si mir selbe müesen jehen.
that they to-me themselves must avow.

nu ist mîn râche an in gescehen
now is my vengeance on them happened

als daz alte sprichwort sprichet:
as the old proverb says:

swen der wolf richet,
whom the wolf avenges,

der ist errochen alsô wol,
he is avenged so well,

daz manz niht fürbaz rechen sol,»
that one-it not further avenge shall,»

sprach der marcgrâve rîche.
spoke the margrave rich.

dô sprâchen sümelîche
then spoke some

«got von himel der sîs gelobt
«God from heaven he be-of-it praised

daz et Hagene hât vertobt.
that just Hagen has raged-out.

der kund nie strîtes werden sat:
he could never of-strife become sated:

er ist nu komen an die stat
he is now come to the place

dâ uns sîn übermuot
where to-us his arrogance

nu vil kleinen schaden tuot.»
now very little harm does.»

At Worms the people recognize Gunther's horse and the messengers' Hunnish dress. Swemmel, under safe-conduct, tells Brunhild alone: her husband, Giselher, Gernot, Hagen, Volker, and Dankwart are all dead. The greatest lament ever raised follows; Uote is fetched from Lorsch, and Worms is full of grief for three days until the land's lords soothe it. Sindold promises that her son will soon be crowned.

Die rede lâzen wir nu sîn.
The speech let we now be.

dô die boten über Rîn
when the messengers over Rhine

ze Wormeze wâren komen,
to Worms were come,

dâ wart ir vaste war genomen. 3530
there was of-them fast heed taken.

ein teil man si bekande
a part one them recognized

bî dem ir gewande:
by the their raiment:

daz was spæhe gesniten
that was artfully cut

nâh den hiunischen siten.
after the Hunnish customs.

dô wundert die burgære 3535
then wondered the townsfolk

dirre vremden mære,
at-these strange tidings,

von wannen si wæren komen
from whence they were come

oder wâ si heten genomen
or where they had taken

Gunthers ros daz guote.
Gunther's horse the good.

dô was in dem muote
then was in the spirit

ein teil den liuten swære,
a part to-the people heavy,

ê daz si diu mære
before that they the tidings

rehte dâ vernâmen.
rightly there heard.

ûf den hof dô quâmen
upon the court then came

die verre wâren dar gesant.
who far were thither sent.

dem gesinde was wol bekant
to-the household was well known

ross und gereite:
horses and harness:

niht langer man dô beite,
not longer one then waited,

man sagt ze hove mære
one told at court tidings

daz dâ komen wære
that there come were

der fürsten wâfen und ir marc.
the princes' weapons and their horses.

dô wart diu vreude alsô starc
then became the joy so strong

vor Prünhilt der rîchen.
before Brunhild the rich.

si sprach minneclîchen
she spoke lovingly

«der mir diu mære rehte seit,
«who to-me the tidings rightly tells,

dem ist mîn miete vil bereit,
to-him is my reward very ready,

wa die boten haben lâzen
where the messengers have left

die herren ûf den strâzen.»
the lords upon the roads.»

Alsô daz geschehen was,
When that happened was,

für der küneginne palas
before the queen's palace

die boten wâren komen nider.
the messengers were come down.

daz gesinde gâhte sider
the household hastened afterward

durch vrâgen der mære,
for asking of-the tidings,

wâ der künec wære,
where the king were,

Gunther der fürste rîche.
Gunther the prince rich.

ein teil blûweclîche
a part bashfully

antwurt der videlære
answered the fiddler

«jane sol ich iu der mære
«yea shall I to-you the tidings

sunderlingen niht sagen:
singly not tell:

ich solse pillîche verdagen,
I should-them fittingly keep-silent,

niwan da ich si sagen sol.
but where I them tell shall.

bringet mich (sô tuot ir wol)
bring me (so do you well)

da ich si sol von rehte sagen:
where I them shall by right tell:

dane wil ich ir niht verdagen.»
there will I them not keep-silent.»

dô gie ein Guntheres man
then went a Gunther's man

für die küneginne sân,
before the queen at-once,

und vrâgte si der mære,
and asked her of-the tidings,

ob ir daz liep wære
whether to-her that dear were

daz die boten für si giengen,
that the messengers before her went,

«die wir dâ vor enpfiengen.
«whom we there before received.

der ist uns einer niht bekant:
of-them is to-us one not known:

idoch bringents in daz lant
yet bring-they into the land

unserr herren sarwât.
our lords' armor.

Swämmelîn dâ bî in stât,
Swemmel there by them stands,

der Etzelen spileman.»
the Etzel's minstrel.»

si sprach «nu heizets her gân.
she spoke «now bid-them hither go.

ich hete nu gerne vernomen
I had now gladly heard

wenne die herren solden komen.»
when the lords should come.»

Swämmel der guote
Swemmel the good

ein teil in swærem muote
a part in heavy spirit

mit den reisgesellen sîn
with the journey-companions his

si giengen für die künegîn.
they went before the queen.

dô sie si für si komen sach,
when she them before her come saw,

diu frouwe güetlîche sprach
the lady kindly spoke

«ir herren, sît willekomen.
«you lords, be welcome.

ich het gern von iu vernomen,
I had gladly from you heard,

wâ habt ir lâzen mînen man?
where have you left my husband?

wie wol ich iu der miete gan,
how well I you the reward grant,

die ich dar umbe geben sol!
which I there for give shall!

mîn herze deist mir sorgen vol:
my heart that-is to-me of-cares full:

daz ir mir ringet des ein teil,
that you to-me ease of-that a part,

deist iuwer frum und mîn heil.
that-is your profit and my salvation.

ob irz kurzlîchen tuot,
if you-it shortly do,

gerne gib ich iu mîn guot.
gladly give I you my goods.

des wunders wirde ich nimmer vrî
of-the wonder become I never free

die wîle, wie daz komen sî
the while, how that come be

daz er mir niemen hât gesant
that he to-me no-one has sent

der sînen, den ich het erkant.
of-the his, whom I had known.

daz getet er mir nie mêre.
that did he to-me never more.

daz müet mich harte sêre.»
that troubles me very sorely.»

Dô sprach der videlære
Then spoke the fiddler

«erloubet mir diu mære,
«allow me the tidings,

küneginne rîche:
queen rich:

sô sage ich baltlîche
so tell I boldly

swaz mir der mære ist bekant.
whatever to-me of-the tidings is known.

ich dinge hie an iuch zehant
I stipulate here with you at-once

daz ez mir âne schaden sî.»
that it to-me without harm be.»

si sprach «des soltu wesen vrî,
she spoke «of-that shalt-thou be free,

daz dir hie iemen iht tuo.
that to-thee here anyone anything do.

dâ hât ouch niemen reht zuo,
there has also no-one right to,

daz er die boten leide.»
that he the messengers harm.»

si sprach «mîn ougen weide
she spoke «my eyes' pasture

diu wæn ze verre ist mir enpfarn.»
that think-I too far is from-me departed.»

sin kunde daz niht bewarn,
she could that not prevent,

sine weinete ê der mære.
but-she wept before the tidings.

dô sprach der videlære
then spoke the fiddler

«Iu enbiutet lieb unde guot
«To-you announces love and good

der künec hôhe gemuot
the king high spirited

ûz hiunischem rîche.
out-of Hunnish realm.

von dem herren Dietrîche
from the lord Dietrich

ist iu ouch dienest her bekomen.
is to-you also service hither come.

wir haben daz vil wol vernomen
we have that very well heard

daz in allez iuwer leit
that to-them all your grief

ist sorge unde ouch arbeit.
is care and also toil.

iu enbiutet ouch den dienest sîn
to-you announces also the service his

der guote bischof Pilgerîn
the good bishop Pilgrim

und heizet iu daz, frouwe, sagen
and bids you that, lady, tell

daz man mæzlîche klagen
that one moderately lament

sül ein ieslîchez leit:
shall every single grief:

er sî iu alles des bereit,
he be to-you of-all that ready,

mit werken und mit lêre,
with deeds and with teaching,

daz iu an frume und êre
what to-you in profit and honor

ze dirre werlde müge komen.
in this world may come.

ouch hân ich dâz von im vernomen,
also have I that from him heard,

er bittet alle küneges man,
he bids all the-king's men,

die iht triuwe wellen hân,
who any faith will have,

daz si iuch und iuwer kindelîn
that they you and your little-child

in wol bevolhen lâzen sîn.
to-them well commended let be.

wand iuwer man der ist tôt:
for your husband he is dead:

Gîselher und Gêrnôt
Giselher and Gernot

megen hie krône niht getragen:
may here crown not wear:

si sint alle drî erslagen.
they are all three slain.

Hagen unde Volkêr
Hagen and Volker

und Dancwart der degen hêr
and Dankwart the thane lordly

die sint mit in bestanden
they are with them remained

tôt in hiunischen landen,
dead in Hunnish lands,

dâ si mit vreuden wânden wesen.
where they with joys thought be.

ir ist einer niht genesen
of-them is one not survived

ir gesindes über al.»
of-their household over all.»

Sich huop der aller meiste schal
Itself raised the of-all greatest clamor

der zen Hiunen ie gescach.
that at-the Huns ever happened.

sô gâhs von herzen nie gebrach
so suddenly from heart never broke

pluot ûz deheinem munde,
blood out-of any mouth,

als ir dâ ze stunde
as to-her there at hour

tet von grôzem leide.
did from great grief.

die marcgrâvinne beide,
the margravines both,

die dâ ze Bechelâren
who there at Bechelaren

ouch mit klage wâren,
also with lament were,

die enklagten nie sô sêre,
they lamented never so sorely,

Prünhilt diu hêre
Brunhild the lordly

klagt wol in ir mâzen.
lamented well in her measure.

diu vrâge was nu lâzen,
the questioning was now left,

daz zuo den boten niemen sprach.
that to the messengers no-one spoke.

Swämmel anders niht ensach,
Swemmel otherwise nothing saw,

wan mit wintenden handen
but with wringing hands

ir jâmer unde ir anden
their sorrow and their pain

klagtens algemeine.
lamented-they all-together.

jane was ez niht eine
yea was it not alone

des künec Guntheres wîp
the king Gunther's woman

diu dâ quelte den lîp:
who there tormented the body:

der klagenden der was mêre.
of-the lamenting-ones there was more.

Uote diu vrouwe hêre
Uote the lady lordly

ze Lôrse in ir hûse was,
at Lorsch in her house was,

dâ si venjete unde las
where she knelt and read

an ir salter alle ir tagezît,
in her psalter all her hours,

in einem münster, daz was wît,
in a minster, that was wide,

des si von êrste dâ began.
which she at first there began.

dô si des künde gewan
when she of-that knowledge won

waz ze Wormez was geseit,
what at Worms was told,

von sorgen sô wart ir bereit
from cares so became to-her prepared

vil manec angestlîcher muot.
very many-a anxious spirit.

diu mære enwâren ir niht guot
the tidings were to-her not good

von ir vil lieben kinden.
of her very dear children.

nie frouwen wuof sô swinden
never lady's wail so fierce

het man mêre vernomen.
had one more heard.

gâhes wolde si dô komen,
quickly would she then come,

swie sô daz geschæhe,
however so that happened,

daz si Prünhilde sæhe.
that she Brunhild saw.

schiere brâht man si dar.
quickly brought one her there.

dô was enwage und ouch envar
then was in-the-scale and also in-peril

daz volc mit lûtem ruofe.
the folk with loud cry.

ir unt der andern wuofe
her and the others' wailing

kunde niht gelîchen.
could not equal.

die armen zuo den rîchen
the poor to the rich
gevrieschen ouch diu mære,
learned also the tidings,
waz diu klage wære,
what the lament were,
in vil kurzen zîten.
in very short times.
in Wormez der wîten
in Worms the wide
klageten wîp unde kint,
lamented women and children,
si hulfen Prünhilde sint
they helped Brunhild afterward
wol beklagen ire leit.
well lament her grief.
vil manec frouwe gemeit
very many-a lady gay
und ouch der burgære wîp,
and also the townsfolk's women,
die senten alsô den lîp,
they pined so the body,
daz man mit freuden niemen vant.
that one with joys no-one found.
in scœnem hâre manec hant
in fair hair many-a hand
erkrachete ofte sêre.
cracked often sorely.
waz mag ih sagen mêre,
what may I tell more,
wan daz ir klage nie gelac,
but that their lament never ceased,
sine werte unz an den dritten tac?
but-it lasted until to the third day?

die besten noch die bœsten
the best nor the worst

kunde niemen getrœsten.
could no-one comfort.

Dô kom dar diu lantschaft,
Then came there the country-folk,

der guoten helede ein michel kraft,
of-the good heroes a great force,

der drîer edeln künege man.
of-the three noble kings' men.

der wîse iz senften began,
the wise it to-soothe began,

der tumbe machts ie mêre.
the foolish made-it ever more.

jâ was des landes êre
yea was the land's honor

bî stuole nider gesezzen:
by seat down seated:

dâ von was unvergezzen
there from was unforgotten

daz si dâ klagen solden.
that they there lament should.

die besten dine wolden
the best they would

vergezzen niht ir triuwe.
forget not their faith.

si senften vil ir riuwe
they soothed much the grief

Prünhilde der rîchen,
of-Brunhild the rich,

und schieden wîslîchen
and parted wisely

vil manec wîp von leide.
very many-a woman from grief.

idoch was vil freide
yet was very fled

Prünhilde hôher muot:
Brunhild's high spirit:

wand si dûhte lützel guot
for her seemed little good

des man ir râten kunde.
what one her counsel could.

Dô kom ouh sâ ze stunde
Then came also straightway at hour

des küneges schenke Sindolt.
the king's cupbearer Sindold.

der diente dicke triuwen solt,
who served often faith's wage,

als ouch dâ von im geschach.
as also there from him happened.

zuo der küneginne er dô sprach
to the queen he then spoke

«frowe, nu mâzet iuwer klagen.
«lady, now moderate your lamenting.

jane kan niemen entsagen
yea can no-one deny

wol dem andern den tôt.
well to-the other the death.

wert nu immer disiu nôt,
lasted now ever this need,

sine wurden doh niht lebehaft.
they became yet not alive.

der klage diu ungefüege kraft
of-the lament the monstrous force

müese doh ein ende hân.
must yet an end have.

irn sît sô eine niht bestân,
you are so alone not remained,

ir megt noh vil wol krône tragen.
you may yet very well crown wear.

frouwe, ez sol in kurzen tagen
lady, it shall in short days

iwer sun bî iu gekrœnet sîn:
your son by you crowned be:

so ergetzet iuch daz kindelîn
so recompenses you the little-child

und uns der grôzen leide.
and us of-the great grief.

vil liebe ougen weide
very dear eyes' pasture

megt ir noh hie vinden:
may you still here find:

iu und iuwern kinden
to-you and your children

wir dienen sam vorhtlîchen
we serve as fearfully

sô bî Gunthere dem rîchen.»
as by Gunther the rich.»

Before the young king, Swemmel tells the whole story, from Hagen's slaying of Siegfried: Dankwart slays Bloedelin, Hagen slays Etzel's child at the table, Volker fights grimly, Rüedeger and Gernot slay each other, and Wolfhart and the Amelungs fall against the Burgundians. Dietrich overcomes Gunther and Hagen and hands them to Kriemhild, who has both slain before Hildebrand slays her. Uote dies of grief seven days later and is buried at Lorsch. Brunhild blames herself for the quarrel that cost Siegfried his life, and the young prince is knighted.

Si sprach «nu müeze iu lônen Krist,
She spoke «now may you reward Christ,

der aller dinge gewaltec ist,
who of-all things powerful is,

daz iuwer sin und iuwer rât
that your sense and your counsel

mîn herze alsô geringet hât;
my heart so eased has;

[wan sol ih immer genesen,
[*for shall I ever recover,*

daz muoz von disem râte wesen.]»
that must from this counsel be.]»

alrêrst hiez man dô für gân
first-of-all bade one then before go

die boten zantwurte stân,
the messengers to-answer stand,

daz si sageten diu mære,
that they told the tidings,

wie ez ergangen wære.
how it come-about were.

den jungen künec man brâhte dar.
the young king one brought there.

Swämmel stuont vor der schar;
Swemmel stood before the troop;

er begunde in diu mære sagen:
he began to-them the tidings tell:

«daz Sîfrit wîlen wart erslagen,
«that Siegfried once was slain,

dâ von si all nu ligent tôt.»
there from they all now lie dead.»

(genuoge sprâchen âne nôt
(enough spoke without need

«ist mir mîn vater dâ belegen?»)
«is to-me my father there laid?»)

«den sluoc Hagene der degen
«him slew Hagen the thane

ze leide sînem wîbe:
to grief to-his woman:

des sint si von dem lîbe
of-that are they from the life

durch ir râche dort gescheiden.
for her vengeance there parted.

ine gevriesch nie haz sô leiden
I learned never hate so hateful

als in diu frowe geleit hât.
as to-them the lady laid has.

mîn sin der krefte niht enhât,
my sense of-the strength not has,

daz ihz iu wol künne sagen.
that I-it you well can tell.

des küneges bruoder wart erslagen:
the king's brother was slain:

daz was mîn her Blœdelîn;
that was my sir Bloedelin;

der was der êrste under in.
he was the first among them.

ze tôde sluoc in Dancwart,
to death slew him Dankwart,

dâ der helt bestanden wart,
where the hero attacked was,
an der herberge bî den knehten.
at the lodging by the squires.
si muosen alle vehten,
they must all fight,
beide junge und alte;
both young and old;
wand si mit gewalte
for they with force
in daz hûs gewunnen an;
into the house won on;
wand ez was verre her dan,
for it was far hither thence,
dâ ir herberge was.
where their lodging was.
der knehte einer niht genas,
of-the squires one not survived,
weder grôz noh kleine,
neither great nor small,
wan Dancwart alterseine.
but Dankwart all-alone.
vil balde er ûzem hûse spranc:
very quickly he out-of-the house leapt:
dô gie âne ir aller danc
then went without their all thanks
hin ze hove der helt mære,
thither to court the hero famed,
unde sagt diu mære
and told the tidings
sînen herren dâ si sâzen
to-his lords where they sat
zer hôhzît und âzen.
at-the feast and ate.

dô sluoc Hagen des wirtes kint
then slew Hagen the host's child

ze sîner angesihte sint,
before his sight then,

daz ez für den tisch scôz
that it before the table shot

und im daz pluot sîn hant begôz.
and him the blood his hand poured-over.

Dâ mit sprungen in den strît
There with leapt into the battle

iuwer drîe künege sît:
your three kings afterward:

des muosez gên über al.
of-that must-it go over all.

dâ wart vil michel der schal
there was very great the clamor

von der swerte klingen.
from the swords' ringing.

vil ungefuoge dringen
very monstrously press

sah man die recken zuo der nôt:
saw one the warriors to the need:

des lâgens alle samt tôt,
of-that lay-they all together dead,

jene dort und dise hie.
those there and these here.

ez enwart sô herter sturm nie
it became so hard assault never

zer werlde gevohten.
in-the world fought.

die wîl si leben mohten,
the while they live might,

von Alzeije Volkêr
of Alzey Volker

tet vil micheliu sêr
did very great sorrows

mit willigen handen:
with willing hands:

iuwerr mâge anden
of-your kinsmen's wrong

der helt sô gremelîchen rach.
the hero so grimly avenged.

vil michel wunder dâ geschach.
very great wonder there happened.

dâ kunde niemen bî gestân,
there could no-one by stand,

der iht êren wolde hân,
who any honor would have,

der müese gewert immer sîn.
he must defended ever be.

durh den künec unt die künegîn
for the king and the queen

sô muosens alle strîten.
so must-they all fight.

in vil angestlîchen zîten
in very anxious times

wart gescheiden doh her dan
was parted yet hither thence

her Dietrich unde sîne man,
sir Dietrich and his men,

der vogt dâ von Berne:
the lord there of Bern:

wand er sah vil ungerne
for he saw very unwillingly

beidenthalp die swære.
on-both-sides the heaviness.

Rüedgêr der helt mære
Rüedeger the hero famed

lie ouch belîben den haz:
let also remain the hate:

durh Gîselher tet er daz.
for Giselher did he that.

der het gevestent im sîn kint:
he had betrothed to-him his child:

daz half in doh wênec sint;
that helped them yet little afterward;

wand si sô vil der vriunt verlurn
for they so many of-the friends lost

unt den grôzen schaden kurn,
and the great harm perceived,

dô griffens algemeine zuo:
then grasped-they all-together to:

daz volc allenthalben duo
the folk on-all-sides then

muose strîten durh die nôt.
must fight for the need.

Etzel bat und ouh gebôt
Etzel bade and also commanded

daz man ræche im sîn kint.
that one avenged for-him his child.

ouh warp diu küneginne sint
also urged the queen afterward

mit bete an Rüedegêre,
with request on Rüedeger,

unz er die degene hêre
until he the thanes lordly

mit strîte ouh muose bestân:
with battle also must attack:

des muos er und die sîne man
of-that must he and the his men

in dem sturme ligen tôt.
in the assault lie dead.

er unt der herre Gêrnôt
he and the lord Gernot

beide ein ander sluogen;
both one another slew;

dâ von in haz dô truogen
there from them hate then bore

die küenen Bernære.
the bold Bernese.

dô sprâchen die helde mære,
then spoke the heroes famed,

si wolden rechen Rüedegêre.
they would avenge Rüedeger.

dô het iz verboten sêre
then had it forbidden sorely

den sînen doh her Dietrîch.
to-the his yet sir Dietrich.

dô was Wolfhart sô gremelîch
then was Wolfhart so grim

daz er sis niht wolde erlân,
that he them-of-it not would spare,

sine müesen iuwer volc bestân.
but-they must your folk attack.

Ê iz her Dietrich dô bevant,
Before it sir Dietrich then found-out,

der von Amelungen lant
of-those of Amelung land

der was einer niht genesen,
of-them was one not survived,

der in scade möhte wesen,
who to-them harm might be,

niwan der alde Hildebrant.
but the old Hildebrand.

iuwers volkes man ouh vant
of-your folk one also found

deheinen lebende mêre,
none living more,

niwan den künec Gunthêre
but the king Gunther

und Hagen den Tronegære.
and Hagen the man-of-Troneg.

Hildebrant disiu mære
Hildebrand these tidings

mit einer wunden muose sagen
with a wound must tell

(die het im Hagene geslagen),
(which had him Hagen struck),

dâ von er kûme sît genas.
there from he hardly afterward recovered.

dô daz alsô ergangen was,
when that so come-about was,

des erkom vil sêr her Dietrîch,
of-that was-startled very sorely sir Dietrich,

wan sîn scade der was vreislîch
for his harm that was dreadful

an mâgen und an sînen man.
in kinsmen and in his men.

zehant dô gie der helt dan
at-once then went the hero thence

da er die recken beide vant,
where he the warriors both found,

er und meister Hildebrant,
he and master Hildebrand,

mit jâmer und mit sêre.
with sorrow and with sorrow.

jâ het der degen hêre
yea had the thane lordly
noch genert si beide:
still saved them both:
done wolden si vor leide
then would they for grief
nâh den andern niht genesen:
after the others not survive:
done moht ez anders niht wesen,
then might it otherwise not be,
sich enræche doh her Dietrîch.
himself unless-avenged yet sir Dietrich.
Gunther der künec rîch
Gunther the king rich
bestuont in müeder als ein degen:
attacked him weary as a thane:
sît twanc in mit swertslegen
afterward forced him with sword-blows
alsô der Bernære,
so the Bernese,
daz er den helt mære
that he the hero famed
zeinem gîsel gewan.
to-a hostage won.
dar nâh bestuont in sîn man
there after attacked him his man
Hagen in kurzen stunden.
Hagen in short hours.
daz hât man wol erfunden,
that has one well learned,
sin heten in nimmer lân genesen,
they had him never let survive,
solden si geruowet wesen:
should they rested be:

wand si heten dâ vor gevohten
for they had there before fought

daz si niht mêr enmohten,
that they not more might,

die zwêne sumerlange tage.
the two summer-long days.

ez ist wâr daz ich iu sage:
it is true what I you tell:

die fürsten und ir recken hêr,
the princes and their warriors lordly,

vierzec tûsent oder mêr
forty thousand or more

hât ir ellen dâ verswant.
has their valor there made-vanish.

swaz ir ie helm ûf gebant,
whatever of-them ever helmet up bound,

der besten wîgande
of-the best fighters

die von manegem lande
who from many-a land

dem künege Etzeln wâren komen,
to-the king Etzel were come,

die hânt ir end von in genomen.
those have their end from them taken.

vor den Hiunen si wæren wol genesen,
before the Huns they were well survived,

wærn die kristen niht gewesen:
were the Christians not been:

die brâhtens in die arbeit,
they brought-them into the toil,

als ich iu ê hân geseit,
as I you before have told,

daz si ein ander sluogen,
that they one another slew,

wand si in niht vertruogen.
for they them not endured.

des muosens alle dâ bestân,
of-that must-they all there remain,

unz an dise zwêne man.
until to these two men.

Hagen und ouh Gunthêr
Hagen and also Gunther

mohten dô niht strîten mêr:
might then not fight more:

dô twanc si Dietrich beide.
then forced them Dietrich both.

in vil grôzem leide
in very great grief

antwurte er si der künegin.
handed-over he them to-the queen.

diu hiez si beide füeren hin
she bade them both lead away

und rach sich vreislîchen;
and avenged herself dreadfully;

den recken lobelîchen
the warriors praiseworthy

hiez si beiden nemen den lîp;
bade she both take the life;

dar umbe dô daz edel wîp
there for then the noble woman

sluoc meister Hildebrant.
slew master Hildebrand.

niemen man dâ mêre vant
no-one one there more found

die dâ sterben solden:
who there die should:

etelîche die wolden
some they would

mit den andern wesen tôt.
with the others be dead.

alsus liez ich si in der nôt,
thus left I them in the need,

von den ich her bin gesant.»
by whom I hither am sent.»

Ir liute huoben sâ zehant
Her people raised straightway at-once

von klage harte grôzen wuof.
from lament very great wailing.

ir jâmer iz dô alsô schuof,
their sorrow it then so made,

si gedâhten schaden unde nôt.
they thought harm and need.

sît klagete unz ûf den tôt
afterward lamented until upon the death

Uote diu vil rîche
Uote the very rich

nâch den helden jæmerlîche,
after the heroes piteously,

ir vil lieben kinden.
her very dear children.

niemen moht ervinden
no-one might find-out

daz si trœsten kunde ûz klage.
that she comfort could out-of lament.

dar nâch über siben tage
there after over seven days

diu vrouwe lac vor leide tôt.
the lady lay for grief dead.

vil kûme von der selben nôt
very hardly from the same need

genas sît diu küneginne:
recovered afterward the queen:

wand si lac in unsinne,
for she lay in madness,

unz man mit wazzer si vergôz.
until one with water her poured-over.

des volkes klage wart sô grôz
of-the folk lament became so great

in allem dem lande.
in all the land.

der Kriemhilde ande
the Kriemhild's grievance

was errochen sêre.
was avenged sorely.

Prünhilt diu hêre,
Brunhild the lordly,

dô si sprechen began,
when she to-speak began,

dô gedâhte si dar an
then thought she there on

wie wol si ez erholte,
how well she it earned,

daz leit daz si nu dolte.
the grief that she now suffered.

was Kriemhilde iht leit ê,
was to-Kriemhild any grievous before,

ir tet diz leit nu alse wê.
to-her did this grief now as woe.

Diu frouwe jæmerlîche sprach
The lady piteously spoke

«ôwê daz ich ie gesach
«alas that I ever saw

der edelen Kriemhilde lîp!
the noble Kriemhild's body!

dô daz êre gernde wîp
when the honor desiring woman

mit rede erzurnde mir den muot,
with speech angered to-me the spirit,

des verlôs der helt guot
of-that lost the hero good

daz leben, Sîfrit, ir man:
the life, Siegfried, her husband:

dâ von ich nu den schaden hân.
there from I now the harm have.

daz ir freude ir wart benomen,
that her joy from-her was taken,

daz ist mir nu her heim komen.»
that is to-me now hither home come.»

wer kunde freude dâ gehaben?
who could joy there have?

diu edel Uote wart begraben
the noble Uote was buried

ze Lôrse bî ir aptei.
at Lorsch by her abbey.

ir brach daz leit ir herze enzwei,
to-her broke the grief her heart in-two,

diu ê vor helden krône truoc.
she-who before before heroes crown bore.

dô was leide genuoc
then was of-grief enough

beide meiden und wîben:
both to-maidens and to-women:

dâ was den scœnen lîben
there was to-the fair bodies

von trahenen naz ir gewant.
from tears wet their raiment.

allez Guntheres lant
all Gunther's land

mit jâmer was bevangen.
with sorrow was seized.

dô kômen ze hove gegangen
then came to court going

die hœhsten unt die besten:
the highest and the best:

swaz si des besten westen
whatever they of-the best knew

der frouwen und ir kinde,
for-the lady and her child,

daz riet in daz gesinde,
that counseled them the household,

dar zuo des landes êre.
there to the land's honor.

sine wolden daz niht mêre
they would that not more

sô sêre klagt diu künegin:
so sorely lamented the queen:

ouch wolden sie niht under in
also would they not among them

langer âne vogt bestân.
longer without lord stand.

daz volc dô râten began,
the folk then to-counsel began,

man machte ritter daz kint.
one made knight the child.

dâ von muose erlescen sint
there from must quench afterward

ein teil ir ungefüegen klage.
a part of-their monstrous lament.

«wir wellen daz er krône trage, 4010
«we will that he crown wear,

daz wir iht âne künec sîn.»
that we not without king be.»

dô hiezen si daz kindelîn
then bade they the little-child

wol bereiten dar zuo.
well prepare there to.

der krône ingesindes duo
of-the crown's household then

wol hundert knappen man dar zuo vant, 4015
full hundred squires one there to found,

den man des tages swert umbe bant.
to-whom one of-the day sword about bound.

XX · RUMOLD'S COUNSEL AND DIETRICH'S DEPARTURE

Rumold, who had counseled Gunther not to go, laments that Hagen's arrogance and his wrong to Kriemhild caused it all, and urges that the young lord be crowned; the feast is held and fiefs are received. Swemmel returns to Etzel. Dietrich and Herrat resolve to leave for Bern, and Etzel pleads in vain; Herrat takes Helche's treasure and a jeweled saddle, and the ladies weep at her leaving. Etzel falls senseless and lingers half alive, neither here nor there.

Dô was ouch Rûmolt nu komen:
Then was also Rumold now come:

der het diu mære ouch vernomen
he had the tidings also heard

dâ heime in sînem lande.
there at-home in his land.

mit triuwen was im ande
with faith was to-him grievance

daz sîn vil lieber herre
that his very dear lord

mit scaden alsô verre
with harm so far

was ûz sînem râte komen.
was out-of his counsel come.

wir haben dicke wol vernomen
we have often well heard

daz er in holt wære:
that he to-them favorable were:

die stolzen helde mære
the proud heroes famed

klagte er senelîche.
lamented he longingly.

er sprach «herre got der rîche,
he spoke «lord God the rich,

daz ich ie wart geborn!
that I ever was born!

mîne herren die hân ich verlorn
my lords them have I lost

niwan von Hagenen übermuot;
only through Hagen's arrogance;

diu dicke grôzen scaden tuot.
which often great harm does.

do er Kriemhilde nam ir man
when he from-Kriemhild took her husband

und ir ir guot an gewan
and from-her her goods from won

in grôzen untriuwen,
in great faithlessness,

ich sah ez an ir riuwen,
I saw it in her grief,

swie siz ane getrüege,
however she-it on might-bear,

daz man si drumbe slüege,
that one her there-for should-slay,

swenne iz ouch geschæhe.
whenever it also happened.

Hagen ir manege smæhe
Hagen to-her many-a insult

zir scaden âne schulde erbôt
to-her harm without guilt offered

zallen zîten âne nôt;
at-all times without need;

des er niht tuon solde,
which he not do should,

ob manz merken wolde:
if one-it mark would:

wand es was im gar ze vil;
for it was to-him wholly too much;

darumbe ihz ir niht wîzen wil.
there-fore I-it her not blame will.

waz het Sîfrit, ir man,
what had Siegfried, her husband,

im ze leide getân?
to-him to grief done?

der wart âne sculde ermort:
he was without guilt murdered:

daz hân ich sider wol gehôrt.
that have I afterward well heard.

waz denne obe durch ir zorn
what then if for their anger

die frouwen beide wol geborn
the ladies both well born

gezurnden in ir tumpheit?
quarreled in their foolishness?

daz solt man hin hân geleit
that should one away have laid

und solde in hân genesen lân.
and should them have survive let.

dô aber des niht moht ergân
when but that not might come-about

und si zen Hiunen frouwe wart,
and she at-the Huns lady became,

dô solden si die hovevart
then should they the court-journey

pillîche haben lân.
fittingly have left.

hete mîn herre getân
had my lord done

als ich im mit triuwen riet,
as I him with faith counseled,

do er von disem lande schiet,
when he from this land parted,

sone wære er niht erstorben.
so were he not dead.

mit im sint verdorben
with him are perished

die besten wîgande,
the best fighters,

die in deheinem lande
whom in any land

künege ie gewunnen
kings ever won

oder gewinnen kunnen,
or win can,

die dort mit in sint erslagen.
who there with them are slain.

sine kunden niht verklagen
they could not cease-lamenting

die in disem lande sint,
who in this land are,

man wîp unde kint,
man woman and child,

die rîchen zuo den armen.
the rich to the poor.

nu müeze iz got erbarmen
now may it God pity

daz kunde helfen niht mîn rât:
that could help not my counsel:

dâ von daz lant nu âne stât
there from the land now without stands

freude und maneger êre.
joy and many-a honor.

uns mac doh leider mêre
us may yet alas more

niht gehelfen unser klage.
not help our lament.

nu scaffet et daz krône trage
now arrange just that crown wear

unser herre der junge.»
our lord the young.»

ir gemeiniu zunge
their common tongue

gab gelîche dô den rât.
gave alike then the counsel.

niemen uns gesaget hât,
no-one to-us told has,

des wir noh vernomen haben,
of-which we yet heard have,

daz sô hêrlîch würde erhaben
that so lordly were raised

in alsô kurzen tagen,
in so short days,

als wir die liute hœren sagen,
as we the people hear tell,

ein alsô grôziu hôhzît.
a so great feast.

Wormez diu stat wît
Worms the city wide

wart gar vol der geste.
became wholly full of-the guests.

jâ heten si daz beste
yea had they the best

mit grôzen triuwen getân.
with great faith done.

dô sah man under krône stân
then saw one under crown stand

den jungen künec rîche:
the young king rich:

si enpfiengen gemeinlîche
they received commonly

ir lêhen von dem kinde.
their fiefs from the child.

der hof unt daz gesinde
the court and the household

wârn ein teil in freude komen.
were a part into joy come.

Nu het ouch Swämmelîn genomen
Now had also Swemmel taken

urloup heim ze lande:
leave home to land:

der in dâ von im sande
he-who him there from him sent

under die Burendenære,
among the Burgundians,

dem sagt er disiu mære.
to-him told he these tidings.

sus kom er wider in Hiunen lant,
thus came he back into Huns' land,

da er noch Etzelen vant
where he still Etzel found

unt den herren Dietrîche.
and the lord Dietrich.

si vrâgten algelîche
they asked all-alike

wie er wider wære komen:
how he back were come:

swaz er gesehen het und vernomen,
whatever he seen had and heard,

daz sagt er als er kunde.
that told he as he could.

an Etzeln sît der stunde
in Etzel since the hour

vreude niemen envant.
joy no-one found.

dô wolde ouch wider in sîn lant
then would also back into his land

her Dietrich von Berne.
sir Dietrich of Bern.

daz sâhen dô vil gerne
that saw then very gladly

frou Herrât und Hildebrant.
lady Herrat and Hildebrand.

dô der künec daz ervant
when the king that learned

daz si niht wolden dâ bestân,
that they not would there remain,

swaz im ê leides was getân,
whatever to-him before of-grief was done,

so gescach im nie sô leide.
so happened to-him never so grievously.

er mant si triuwen beide,
he reminded them of-faith both,

Hildebrande unt Dietrîchen:
Hildebrand and Dietrich:

«welt ir mir nu entwîchen,
«will you from-me now escape,

sît ich mîn volc verlorn hân?
since I my folk lost have?

wie sol ich eine nu bestân?»
how shall I alone now remain?»

Dô sprach der Bernære
Then spoke the Bernese

«wie wolt ir daz ich wære
«how would you that I were

ân helfe und ân die mîne?
without help and without the mine?

ein ieslîch man die sîne
every single man the his

bî im vil pillîchen hât.
by him very fittingly has.

ir sehet wol wie mîn dinc stât:
you see well how my thing stands:

ich unt diu triutinne mîn
I and the beloved mine

suln niht mêr ellende sîn.»
shall not more exiles be.»

swaz Etzel vlêgen kunde
whatever Etzel beseech could

oder pitten zuo der stunde,
or bid at the hour,

dar umbe wolden siz niht lân,
there for would they-it not leave,

er muose âne sie bestân.
he must without them remain.

sie vlizzen sich der reise.
they applied themselves to-the journey.

manec witewe und weise
many-a widow and orphan

belîben muose hinder in.
remain must behind them.

Etzel wandelte den sin
Etzel changed the sense

von disen starken leiden.
from these strong griefs.

do si von im wolden scheiden,
when they from him would part,

als man uns gesagt hât,
as one us told has,

dô nam diu vrouwe Herrât
then took the lady Herrat

daz ir diu künegin Helche lie.
what to-her the queen Helche left.

doh muoses vil belîben hie,
yet must-it much remain here,

wand siz ninder bringen kunden:
for they-it nowhere bring could:

doh fuorten sis an den stunden
yet led they-it at the hours

mit in (des hete si gegert)
with them (of-that had she desired)

wol ahzec tûsent marke wert.
full eighty thousand marks worth.

frou Herrât urloup dô nam.
lady Herrat leave then took.

den vrouwen dô niht anders zam
to-the ladies then not otherwise befitted

niwan weinen unde klagen.
but weeping and lamenting.

ûz der kamere wart getragen
out-of the chamber was carried

ein satel, der was rîche,
a saddle, that was rich,

den dicke werdeclîche
which often worthily

frou Helche hête geriten.
lady Helche had ridden.

ûf den satel was gesniten
upon the saddle was cut

der aller beste sigelât
the of-all best silk-cloth

den iemen in der werlde hât.
which anyone in the world has.

jane kan ich iu besunder
yea can I you singly

gesagen niht daz wunder,
tell not the wonder,

wie dem werke wære:
how the work were:

von golde was er swære
of gold was it heavy

und von edelem gesteine.
and of noble jewels.

küneges wîp deheine
king's woman none

bezzern satel nie gereit.
better saddle never rode.

diu vil rîchen pfertkleit
the very rich horse-cloths

hiengen nider unz ûf daz gras.
hung down until upon the grass.

dô si nu gar bereitet was
when she now wholly prepared was

zir verte als sie luste,
to-her journey as her pleased,

die frouwen si dô kuste
the ladies she then kissed

alle gemeine.
all together.

done was ir deheine,
then was of-them none,

sine weinten alsô sêre
but-they wept so sorely

sam dô Helche diu hêre
as when Helche the lordly

mit tôde was von in bekomen.
with death was from them come.

sô swinder urloup wart genomen
so swift leave was taken

nie in hove von vrouwen:
never in court by ladies:

daz moht man dô wol schouwen.
that might one then well behold.

Dô si zem wirte urloup genâmen
When they from-the host leave took

und ê si ûz dem hove quâmen,
and before they out-of the court came,

der künec viel nider für tôt.
the king fell down as dead.

im gab der jâmer sölhe nôt,
him gave the sorrow such need,

daz er der sinne niht behielt
that he the senses not kept

und sô kranker witze wielt
and so feeble wits wielded

daz er unversunnen lac.
that he senseless lay.

lebt er sît deheinen tac,
lived he afterward any day,

des het er doch vil kleinen frumen;
of-that had he yet very little profit;

wande im was an sîn herze kumen
for to-him was into his heart come

diu riuwe alsô manecvalt,
the grief so manifold,

daz in daz leit mit gewalt
that him the grief with force

lie selten sît gesprechen wort.
let seldom afterward speak word.

ern was weder hie noh dort,
he was neither here nor there,

ern was tôt noh enlebete.
he-not was dead nor lived.

in einem twalme er swebete
in a stupor he hovered

dar nâch in weiz wie manegen tac.
there after I-not know how many-a day.

swie grôzer hêrscefte er pflac,
however great lordship he held,

dar zuo was er nu gedigen,
there to was he now come,

daz si in eine liezen ligen
that they him alone let lie

und niemen ûf in niht enahte.
and no-one upon him at-all heeded.

wie erz sît bedâhte,
how he-it afterward bethought,

daz hât uns niemen noch geseit, 4205
that has us no-one yet told,

dô her Dietrich dan gereit.
when sir Dietrich thence rode.

XXI · BECHELAREN AND THE BOOK

Hildebrand guides Herrat to Bechelaren, where Dietlind's mother has died of grief three days before. Herrat and Dietrich comfort Dietlind; he promises to give her a husband to till her lands with her and commends her to her father's men. Bishop Pilgrim had the whole tale written down in Latin from the fiddler's account by his scribe, Master Konrad, and it has often been told in German since; this song is called the Lament. What became of Etzel afterward, whether he was slain, taken by the air, buried alive, or swallowed by the devil, no one knows.

Dô si nu wâren ûf den wegen,
When they now were upon the ways,

dô hiez der hêrlîche degen
then bade the lordly thane

Hildebrant den grîsen
Hildebrand the gray

sîne vrouwen wîsen 4210
his lady guide

gegen Bechelâren,
toward Bechelaren,

dâ sîne mâge wâren.
where his kin were.

ir gezoges was niht mêre,
of-their train was not more,

niwan diu maget hêre
but the maiden lordly

unt die einen zwêne man,
and the only two men,

unt daz ein soumer mit in dan
and that a packhorse with them thence

truoc froun Herrâten kleit.
carried lady Herrat's clothes.

mit grôzem jâmer dô reit
with great sorrow then rode

durh diu lant her Dietrich.
through the lands sir Dietrich.

si gâhten allez für sich
they hastened all before themselves

mit jâmer und mit sorgen.
with sorrow and with cares.

an dem sibenden morgen
on the seventh morning

dise geste komen wâren
these guests come were

zer burc ze Bechelâren.
to-the castle at Bechelaren.

die liute vrieschen mære,
the people learned tidings,

daz dâ komen wære
that there come were

der herre von Perne.
the lord of Bern.

daz volc iz hôrte gerne.
the folk it heard gladly.

si sagtenz Dietlinde,
they told-it to-Dietlind,

dem Rüedegêres kinde.
the Rüedeger's child.

diu was noch in grôzer nôt,
she was still in great need,

wand ir muoter diu was tôt
for her mother she was dead

dâ vor inner drîen tagen.
there before within three days.

si mohte ir tougen niht verklagen
she might her secret not cease-lamenting

umb ir vil lieben mannes lîp.
for her very dear husband's body.

des starp daz êrbære wîp
of-that died the honorable woman

vor dem vil starkem leide.
from the very strong grief.

die juncfrouwen beide
the young-ladies both

man dô zesamne brâhte.
one then together brought.

ieslîchiu dô gedâhte
each then thought

vreude und grôzer sêre.
of-joy and of-great sorrow.

in zühticlîcher êre
in courteous honor

si ein ander kusten.
they one another kissed.

dô twanc zuo den brusten
then pressed to the breast

Dietlinden frou Herrât.
Dietlind lady Herrat.

si sprach «dîn mac noh werden rât,
she spoke «to-thee may yet become help,

sol leben mîn friunt her Dietrich.
(if)-shall live my friend sir Dietrich.

du solt wol gehaben dich.»
thou shalt well have thee.»

Dô sprah si «mîn wol gehaben
Then spoke she «my well having

daz ist allez nu begraben
that is all now buried

an vater und an muoter.
in father and in mother.

vil friunde sô guoter
many friends so good

ih wæn verlür noh nie meit.»
I think lost yet never maiden.»

in klagelîcher arebeit
in lamentable toil

vant si dô her Dietrîch.
found her then sir Dietrich.

die jungen maget lobelîch
the young maiden praiseworthy

trôst er als ein friunt sol.
comforted he as a friend shall.

«niftel, nu gehabe dih wol
«niece, now have thee well

und senfte dîner leide.
and soften thy grief.

jâ riuwent si mih beide,
yea grieve they me both,

dîn vater unt diu muoter dîn:
thy father and the mother thine:

diu muoz ih immer mêre sîn
them must I ever more be

klagende unz an mînen tôt.
lamenting until to my death.

überwinde ih immer mîne nôt
(if)-overcome I ever my need

und kum ih immer in mîn lant,
and (if)-come I ever into my land,

daz lob ih an dîne hant
that vow I into thy hand

daz ih dih gerne scheide
that I thee gladly part

von jâmer und von leide,
from sorrow and from grief,

sô ih verreste kan.»
as I farthest can.»

des wart ir sicherheit getân
of-that was to-her surety made

von dem Pernære.
by the Bernese.

sô sprach der helt mære:
so spoke the hero famed:

«sol ih deheine wîle leben,
«(if)-shall I any while live,

ih wil dih einem manne geben,
I will thee to-a man give,

der mit dir bouwet dîniu lant.»
who with thee tills thy lands.»

hie mit bevalh er dâ zehant
here with commended he there at-once

die maget ir vater mannen.
the maiden to-her father's men.

dô scieden si von dannen.
then parted they from thence.

lachende ez niht gescach.
laughing it not happened.

dô von ir rîtende sach
when from her riding saw

Herrât diu marcgrâvinne,
Herrat the margravine,

von allem ir sinne
from all her mind

erpibente si vil sêre,
trembled she very sorely,

daz diu vil grôze êre
that the very great honor

an si eine was bekomen.
on her alone was come.

doh wart ir sider war genomen
yet was of-her afterward heed taken

als ez ir êren gezam:
as it her honor befitted:

irn was niemen sô gram,
to-her was no-one so hostile,

der ir tæte deheiniu leit.
who to-her did any grief.

alsus warte diu meit
thus waited the maiden

mit triuwen und mit stæte,
with faith and with steadfastness,

als ir gelobet hæte
as to-her vowed had

der herre dâ von Berne.
the lord there of Bern.

des erbeite si vil gerne.
of-that waited she very gladly.

Von Pazowe der biscof Pilgerîn
Of Passau the bishop Pilgrim

durh liebe der neven sîn
for love of-the nephews his

hiez scrîben ditze mære,
bade write this tale,

wie ez ergangen wære,
how it come-about were,

in latînischen buochstaben,
in Latin letters,

daz manz für wâr solde haben,
that one-it for true should have,

swerz dar nâh erfunde,
whoever-it there after found,

von der alrêrsten stunde,
from the very-first hour,

wie ez sih huob und ouh began,
how it itself raised and also began,

und wie ez ende gewan,
and how it end won,

umbe der guoten knehte nôt,
about the good squires' need,

und wie si alle gelâgen tôt.
and how they all lay dead.

daz hiez er allez schrîben.
that bade he all write.

ern liez es niht belîben,
he let it not remain,

wand im seit der videlære
for to-him told the fiddler

diu kuntlîchen mære,
the known tidings,

wie ez ergie und gescach;
how it went and happened;

wand erz hôrte unde sach,
for he-it heard and saw,

er unde manec ander man.
he and many-a other man.

daz mære prieven dô began
the tale to-write-down then began

sîn schrîber, meister Kuonrât.
his scribe, master Konrad.

getihtet man ez sît hât
composed one it afterward has

dicke in tiuscher zungen.
often in German tongue.

die alten mit den jungen
the old with the young

erkennent wol daz mære.
know well the tale.

von ir freud noch von ir swære
of their joy nor of their heaviness

ich iu nu niht mêre sage.
I you now not more tell.

ditze liet heizet diu klage.
this song is-called the lament.

Wie ez Etzeln sît ergienge
How it to-Etzel afterward went

und wier sîn dinc ane vienge,
and how-he his thing on took,

dô her Dietrich von im reit,
when sir Dietrich from him rode,

des enkan ich der wârheit
that can I of-the truth

iu noh niemen gesagen.
you nor anyone tell.

sümelîche jehent er würde erslagen:
some say he were slain:

sô sprechent sümelîche nein.
so speak some no.

under disen dingen zwein
among these things two

kan ich der lüge niht gedagen
can I of-the lie not keep-silent

noh die wârheit gesagen:
nor the truth tell:

want dâ hanget zwîfel bî.
for there hangs doubt by.

des wunders wirde ich nimmer vrî,
of-the wonder become I never free,

weder er sich vergienge,
whether he himself went-astray,

oder in der luft enpfienge,
or him the air received,

oder lebende würde begraben,
or living were buried,

oder ze himele ûf erhaben,
or to heaven up raised,

oder ob er ûz der hiute trüffe,
or if he out-of the skin slipped,

oder sich verslüffe
or himself crept-away

in löcher der steinwende,
into holes of-the rock-walls,

oder mit welhem ende
or with what end

er von dem lîbe quæme,
he from the body came,

oder waz in zim genæme,
or what him to-itself took,

ob er füere in daz apgründe,
if he went into the abyss,

oder ob in der tiufel verslünde,
or if him the devil swallowed,

oder ob er sus sî verswunden,
or if he thus be vanished,

daz enhât niemen noh erfunden.
that has no-one yet learned.

uns seit der tihtære,
to-us says the poet,

der uns tihte ditze mære,
who for-us composed this tale,

ez enwær von im sus niht beliben,
it were by him thus not remained,

er het iz gerne gescriben,
he had it gladly written,

daz man wiste diu mære,
that one knew the tidings,

wie ez im ergangen wære,
how it to-him come-about were,

wære iz im inder zuo komen,
were it to-him anywhere to come,

oder het erz sus vernomen
or had he-it thus heard

in der werlde von iemen.
in the world from anyone.

dâ von weiz noch niemen
there of knows still no-one

war der künec Etzel ie bequam
whither the king Etzel ever came

oder wiez umbe in ende nam.
or how-it about him end took.

Der Rosengarte

The Rose Garden at Worms

At Worms King Gibich's daughter Kriemhild, wooed by Siegfried, keeps a rose garden a mile long, walled by a silk thread and guarded by twelve champions, and challenges Dietrich of Bern to bring twelve to fight them; each victor wins a wreath, an embrace, and a kiss. Duke Sabin of Brabant carries the letter for the hand of Bersabe. At Bern Dietrich and his men want to kill the envoys, but Wolfhart takes their side and Hildebrand has them honored; Dietrich sends word that he will come with sixty thousand men, and Kriemhild gives Sabin Bersabe.

Ein stat lît an dem Rîne, diu ist sô wünnesam 1
A city lies on the Rhine, which is so delightful

und ist geheizen Wormze. sie weiz noch manec man.
and is called Worms. it knows still many-a man.

darinne saz ein recke, der hête stolzen muot:
there-in sat a warrior, who had proud spirit:

er was geheizen Gibeche und was ein künec guot.
he was called Gibich and was a king good.

Der hête bî sîner vrouwen drî süne hôch[geborn] 2
He had by his lady three sons [high-born]

und ouch ein schœnez megedîn. [durch die wart verlorn]
and also a fair maiden. [for whom was lost]

manec küener degen, sô ma[n uns von in seit.]
many-a bold thane, as [one us of them tells.]

Kriemhilt was si geheiz[en, diu keiserlîche meit.]
Kriemhild was she [called, the imperial maiden.]

Sie begunde vrîen e[in stolzer wîgant,] 3
Her began to-woo [a proud fighter,]

der was geheizen Sîv[rit, ein helt ûz Niderlant.]
he was called [Siegfried, a hero from Netherlands.]

der pflac sô grôzer sterke, daz er die lewen vienc
he had so great strength, that he the lions caught
und sie mit den zegeln über die mûren hienc.
and them with the tails over the walls hung.

4 Dô wart ir von dem Berner wunders vil geseit.
Then was to-her of the Bernese of-wonders much told.
si gedâhte ir manege liste, diu keiserlîche meit,
she devised herself many cunnings, the imperial maiden,
wie si ze samene bræhte die zwêne küenen man,
how she to together brought the two bold men,
durch daz man sæhe, von welhem daz beste würde getân.
so that one saw, by which the best were done.

5 Si hête einen anger mit rôsen wol gekleit,
She had a meadow with roses well clad,
der was einer mîlen lanc und einer halben breit.
it was of-a mile long and of-a half broad.
darumbe gienc ein mûre von eim vadem sîdîn.
there-about went a wall of a thread silken.
si sprach: 'trutz sî allen vürsten, daz keiner kome darîn.
she spoke: 'defiance be to-all princes, that none come there-in.

6 Die mir des garten hüetent, daz sint zwelf küene man,
Who for-me the garden guard, those are twelve bold men,
sô ich's in mîme rîche iender vinden kan:
as I-them in my realm anywhere find can:
der êrste daz ist mîn vater, ein künec hôchgenant.
the first that is my father, a king high-named.
Gêrnôt unde Gunther die sint vil wol bekant.
Gernot and Gunther they are very well known.

Der vierde heizet Hagene, der letzet in den tôt. 7
The fourth is-called Hagen, he wounds into the death.

der vünfte heizet Volkêr, der machet grôze nôt.
the fifth is-called Volker, he makes great need.

der sehste heizet Pûsolt, der sibende Schrûtân.
the sixth is-called Pusold, the seventh Schrutan.

der ahte heizet Ortwîn, der ist ein küener man.
the eighth is-called Ortwin, he is a bold man.

Der niunde heizet Aspriân, des lîp ist unverzeit. 8
The ninth is-called Asprian, whose body is undaunted.

* * *
(lacuna)

der zehende heizet Walther von dem Wasgenstein
the tenth is-called Walther of the Wasgenstein

[und ist an dem Rîne] der küensten vürsten ein.
[*and is on the Rhine*] *of-the boldest princes one.*

[Der eilfte heizet Stûdenvuhs,] der kan ouch vehten wol 9
[*The eleventh is-called Studenfuchs,*] *he can also fight well*

[und gît in den strîten d]en recken swæren zol.
[*and gives in the fights t*]*o-the warriors heavy toll.*

[der zwelfte heizet Sîvrit, ein] helt von Niderlant,
[*the twelfth is-called Siegfried, a*] *hero of Netherlands,*

[der strîtet nâch grôzen êren mit] sîner vrîen hant.'
[*he fights after great honors with*] *his free hand.'*

Si sprach: 'der dâ durchvüere alliu wîtiu lant, 10
She spoke: 'who there traversed all wide lands,

man vünde keinen künec, der dâ wære sô hôchgenant,
one would-find no king, who there were so high-named,

und kæme er in die rôsen selbe zwelfte sîner man,
if should-come he into the roses himself twelfth of-his men,

ich spriche ez sicherlîche, im müeste misselingen dran.'
I say it surely, to-him must miscarry there-on.'

11 Dô sprach der helt Walther, ein küener degen guot:
Then spoke the hero Walther, a bold thane good:

'solhe widertrutze durch iuwern übermuot
'such defiances through your arrogance

enpietet ir rîchen künegen, die iu sint unbekant?
send you to-rich kings, who to-you are unknown?

man vünde noch snelle helde, die vüeren durch diu lant,
one found yet swift heroes, who traveled through the lands,

12 Die wol getörsten vehten vor künegen hôchgemuot.
Who well dared fight before kings high-minded.

gevrieschen'z die Wülfinge, ez diuhte sie niemer guot.
should-learn-it the Wolfings, it would-seem them never good.

her Dietrîch von Berne und sîne dienestman,
sir Dietrich of Bern and his service-men,

die hânt bî unsern zîten daz beste ie getân.
they have in our times the best ever done.

13 Ervüeren sie diu mære, sie vüeren über Rîn.
Should-learn they the tidings, they would-travel over Rhine.

des müeste enkelten manec helt, des sült ir sicher sîn:
of-that must pay many-a hero, of-that shall you sure be:

der anger würde gerœtet und von bluote naz.'
the meadow were reddened and with blood wet.'

dô sprach diu küneginne: 'wie möhte uns wesen baz!
then spoke the queen: 'how might to-us be better!

Hête ich einen boten,' sprach diu künegîn, 14
Had I a messenger,' spoke the queen,

'der dâhin gein Berne mîn diener wolte sîn,
'who thither toward Bern my servant would be,

deme sô wolte ich lônen mit mîner milten hant,
him so would I reward with my generous hand,

daz er den Wülfingen disiu mære tæte bekant.'
that he to-the Wolfings these tidings made known.'

Dô sprach ein vürste junger, ein herzoge von Brâbant: 15
Then spoke a prince young, a duke of Brabant:

'ir hât ûf iuwerm hove, küneginne hôchgenant,
'you have upon your court, queen high-named,

eine schœne juncvrouwen, der hân ich, daz ist wâr,
a fair young-lady, her have I, that is true,

mit sper und ouch mit schilte gedienet ahte jâr.
with spear and also with shield served eight years.

Si ist geheizen Bersâbe, diu edel herzogîn. 16
She is called Bersabe, the noble duchess.

gebet ir mir ze wîbe daz schœne megedîn,
(if)-give you me to woman the fair maiden,

iuwer bote wolte ich werden gein Berne in daz lant,
your messenger would I become toward Bern into the land,

nâch den Wülfingen würd ich von iu gesant.'
after the Wolfings were I by you sent.'

Si nam in bî der hende und vuorte in al zehant 17
She took him by the hand and led him all at-once

in eine kemenâten, dâ si die maget vant.
into a chamber, where she the maiden found.

si sprach: 'vil edel Bersâbe, schœne und wolgetân,
she spoke: 'very noble Bersabe, fair and well-made,

du solt disen ritter loben ze eime man.
thou shalt this knight betroth to a man.

18 Er wil unser bote werden gein Berne in daz lant,
He will our messenger become toward Bern into the land,

nâch den Wülfingen wirt er von mir gesant.
after the Wolfings is he by me sent.

die tiursten ûz dem lande die koment uns über Rîn,
the dearest out-of the land they come to-us over Rhine,

sich hebet ein michel houwen: wie möhte uns baz gesîn!'
itself raises a great hewing: how might to-us better be!'

19 'Ich enbin niht iuwer eigen,' sprach diu herzogîn,
'I am not your own,' spoke the duchess,

'welt ir die helde morden, daz sol ân mîne schulde sîn.
'(if)-will you the heroes murder, that shall without my guilt be.

im wirt ân mich gelônet, sol er gelücke hân.
to-him is without me rewarded, (if)-shall he fortune have.

er sol durch mînen willen der boteschaft niht bestân.'
he shall for my sake the errand not undertake.'

20 Er sprach: 'nemet von mîner hende diz guldîn vingerlîn,
He spoke: 'take from my hand this golden ring,

ob ich dâ ze Berne verliese daz houbet mîn,
if I there at Bern lose the head mine,

daz ir doch sült wizzen, daz ich nâch ritters siten,
that you yet shall know, that I after knight's customs,

juncvrouwe, durch iuwern willen gein Berne sî geriten.'
young-lady, for your sake toward Bern be ridden.'

Si sprach: ‘swar ir komet der lande, sô müeze iuch got bewarn.’ 21
She spoke: ‘wherever you come of-the lands, so may you God guard.’

man sach mit grôzen êren den herzogen von ir varn.
one saw with great honors the duke from her go.

dô nam ûz sîme lande der vürste lobesam
then took out-of his land the prince praiseworthy

vünf hundert ritter küene, die wâren wolgetân.
five hundred knights bold, who were well-made.

Dô schiften sie vil balde ze Wormze über Rîn, 22
Then shipped they very quickly at Worms over Rhine,

dô muosten sie die êrsten naht ze Heidelberge sîn.
then must they the first night at Heidelberg be.

an dem andern âbent, die recken hôchgenant,
on the second evening, the warriors high-named,

dô kâmen sie gein Halle in der werden Swâben lant.
then came they toward Halle in the worthy Swabians’ land.

An dem dritten âbent kâmen sie geriten 23
On the third evening came they ridden

dâhin gein Nördelingen nâch ritterlîchen siten.
thither toward Noerdlingen after knightly customs.

an dem vierden tage kâmen sie mit êren dô
on the fourth day came they with honors then

in die guoten stat ze Augespurc, dâ wurden sie vil vrô.
into the good city at Augsburg, there became they very glad.

Darnâch kâmen sie gein Garte und sâhen Berne an. 24
There-after came they toward Garda and saw Bern on.

dô sprach der herzoge, der ritter lobesam:
then spoke the duke, the knight praiseworthy:

‘nu bindet ûf die helme, ich wæne, es sî uns nôt:
‘now bind on the helmets, I think, of-it be to-us need:

ich vürhte, daz uns vrou Kriemhilt habe versendet in den tôt.’
I fear, that us lady Kriemhild have sent into the death.’

25 Dô sprach ein küener ritter ze dem vürsten guot:
Then spoke a bold knight to the prince good:

‘dô ir sô zagelîche woltet wenden iuwern muot,
‘when you so cowardly would turn your spirit,

dô soltet ir uns billîch bî Rîne hân gelân.
then should you us fittingly by Rhine have left.

ir hât mit iuwern worten vil zagelîche getân.’
you have with your words very cowardly done.’

26 Dô sprach der herzoge: ‘des werdet ir wol gewar,
Then spoke the duke: ‘of-that become you well aware,

ob ich zagelîche hie vehte an der schar.
whether I cowardly here fight in the troop.

sol ich hie ze Berne verliesen mînen lîp,
(if)-shall I here at Bern lose my life,

ich mache tûsent witewen, die noch sint ritters wîp.’
I make thousand widows, who still are knights’ women.’

27 Zehen hundert ritter hête der Berner lobesam,
Ten hundred knights had the Bernese praiseworthy,

die ime ze den zîten wâren undertân.
who to-him at the times were subject.

die hête ze hûse geladen der Berner unverzeit,
them had to house invited the Bernese undaunted,

mit in die schœnen vrouwen, sô man uns von im seit.
with them the fair ladies, as one us of him tells.

Die recken hêten gezzen, die tâveln wâren blôz. 28
The warriors had eaten, the tables were bare.

dô man den herren wazzer al umbe und umbe gôz,
when one to-the lords water all about and about poured,

dô huop sich von den tâveln ein wünneclîchiu schar.
then raised itself from the tables a delightful troop.

dô sprach der voget von Berne: 'nemet alle war,
then spoke the lord of Bern: 'take all heed,

Sitzet alle stille und gebet mir iuwern rât: 29
Sit all still and give me your counsel:

uns koment vremede geste, swie ez darumbe stât,
to-us come strange guests, however it there-about stands,

verwâpent vîntlîche und rîtent durch mîn lant
armed hostilely and ride through my land

gar âne mîn geleite, daz ist mir wol bekant.
wholly without my escort, that is to-me well known.

Wie süln wir sie enpfâhen? sie sint unverzeit. 30
How shall we them receive? they are undaunted.

nieman sie mac erkennen. daz ist mir vil leit.'
no-one them may recognize. that is to-me very grievous.'

dô sprâchen sie alle gelîche, hern Dietrîches man:
then spoke they all alike, sir Dietrich's men:

'mit herten swertes slegen süln wir sie enpfân.'
'with hard sword's blows shall we them receive.'

31 An den stunden kâmen die geste vür den sal
At the hours came the guests before the hall

und erbeizten ritterlîche, vrœlîche überal.
and dismounted knightly, joyfully everywhere.

* * *
(lacuna)

* * *
(lacuna)

32 Wolfhart der was gegangen an ein venster stân,
Wolfhart he was gone at a window stand,

er sprach: 'lieber herre, die geste ich gesehen hân.
he spoke: 'dear lord, the guests I seen have.

wære ich nu gewâpent in die ringe mîn,
were I now armed in the rings mine,

sô wolte ich vür die reise niht ze himelrîche sîn.'
so would I for the journey not in heaven be.'

33 Dô gienc an ein venster ein herzogîn zehant,
Then went to a window a duchess at-once,

diu was ze gîsel gesetzet in Lampartenlant.
she was as hostage set in Lombardy.

ir zuht und ir êre hête si vil unverlorn.
her courtesy and her honor had she very unlost.

diu selbe herzoginne von dem Rîne was geborn.
the same duchess from the Rhine was born.

34 Si sprach: 'mir sint die geste ein teil wol bekant:
She spoke: 'to-me are the guests a part well known:

er ist geheizen Sabîn, ein herzoge von Brâbant.
he is called Sabin, a duke of Brabant.

waz haltent sie sô lange? ich wil diu mære ervarn.'
why halt they so long? I will the tidings learn.'

man sach die herzoginne die reise niht langer sparn.
one saw the duchess the journey not longer spare.

Über hof gienc si drâte, dâ si die geste vant. 35
Over court went she quickly, where she the guests found.

'sît gote willekomen, ein herzoge von Brâbant
'be to-God welcome, a duke of Brabant

und alle iuwer diener, swie die sîn genant!
and all your servants, however they be named!

her Dietrîch von Berne der ist iu niht rehte erkant,
sir Dietrich of Bern he is to-you not rightly known,

Daz ir gât sô verwâpent, ir recken unverzeit, 36
That you go so armed, you warriors undaunted,

und sît her komen mit grimme, daz mac iu werden leit.
and are hither come with fury, that may to-you become grievous.

daz müejet in vil sêre und alle sîne man:
that troubles him very sorely and all his men:

mit zehen hundert recken sô wil er iuch bestân.'
with ten hundred warriors so will he you attack.'

'Getörsten wir, juncvrouwe, mit iu vür in gân 37
'Dared we, young-lady, with you before him go

und möhten iuwer geleite, vil edeliu maget, hân,
and might your escort, very noble maiden, have,

ich und alle mîne man, die mit mir hie sîn,
I and all my men, who with me here are,

des würde iu wol gelônet ûf die triuwe mîn.'
of-that were to-you well rewarded upon the faith mine.'

38 ‘Nu bin ich ellende hie,’ sprach diu schœne meit,
‘Now am I in-exile here,’ spoke the fair maiden,
‘möhtet ir mîn iht gniezen, daz wære iu unverseit.’
‘might you of-me anything profit, that were to-you unrefused.’
des dankete ir mit zühten der herre von Brâbant:
for-that thanked her with courtesies the lord of Brabant:
‘wir hân an iu geleites gnuoc.’ si nam in bî der hant
‘we have in you of-escort enough.’ she took him by the hand

39 Und vuorte in zühteclîche ûf hern Dietrîches sal.
And led him courteously up sir Dietrich’s hall.
dâ gruozte er die hêrschaft besunder überal:
there greeted he the lordship singly everywhere:
‘got grüeze tûsent stunde den wirt vil hôchgeborn,
‘God greet thousand times the host very high-born,
den diz edel gesinde hât ze herren ûz erkorn.’
whom this noble household has to lord out chosen.’

40 Des antwurte ime in zühten der Berner lobesam,
To-that answered him in courtesies the Bernese praiseworthy,
alsô ez tugentlîche eime vürsten wol gezam:
as it virtuously to-a prince well befitted:
‘got danke iu tûsent stunde, ir recke wolgeborn,
‘God thank you thousand times, you warrior well-born,
wan mich diz gesinde hât ze herren ûz erkorn.
since me this household has to lord out chosen.

41 Sît willekomen enpfangen. ir sült mich wizzen lân,
Be welcome received. you shall me know let,
ob ich bî mînen zîten iht wider iuch habe getân,
whether I in my times anything against you have done,

daz ir sô wol verwâpent vür mîne tâveln sît gegân.
that you so well armed before my tables are gone.

hêtet ir rehte sinne, ir soltet ez hân gelân.'
had you right senses, you should it have left.'

Des antwurte ime in zühten der herre von Brâbant: 42
To-that answered him in courtesies the lord of Brabant:

'dô wâren uns hie ze Berne die wirte vil unbekant:
'then were to-us here at Bern the hosts very unknown:

wem solten wir hân gelâzen die ringe stehelîn?
to-whom should we have left the rings steel?

uns hât vür iuch geleitet ein schœnez megedîn.'
us has before you led a fair maiden.'

Si sprach: 'vil edeler vürste, lât sie geniezen mîn 43
She spoke: 'very noble prince, let them profit of-me

durch aller vrouwen êre ∗∗∗
for all ladies' honor (lacuna)

und daz ir wellet êren die himelische meit.'
and that you will honor the heavenly maiden.'

dô sprach der voget von Berne: 'daz sî iu unverseit.'
then spoke the lord of Bern: 'that be to-you unrefused.'

Dô sprach der herzoge ze dem vürsten hôchgenant: 44
Then spoke the duke to the prince high-named:

'heizet lesen dise brieve, die sint iu gesant:
'bid read these letters, they are to-you sent:

sie sendet iu von Rîne ein hêriu künegîn,
them sends you from Rhine a lordly queen,

ir vater heizet Gibeche, der bote wir hie sîn.'
her father is-called Gibich, whose messengers we here are.'

45 ‘Swaz darane geschriben stê, daz lese ein glêrter man.’
‘Whatever there-on written stands, that read a learned man.’

ûf spranc dô vil schiere der Berners kapelân.
up sprang then very quickly the Bernese’s chaplain.

er nam den brief in die hant, dô er in ane sach,
he took the letter into the hand, when he it on looked,

er kêrte sich hinumbe und lachete unde sprach:
he turned himself round and laughed and spoke:

46 ‘Swer ritter welle werden oder ritter worden sî,
‘Whoever knight will become or knight become be,

der trete herzuo und hœre und sî mir nâher bî.
he step hither and hear and be to-me nearer by.

ein künegîn von Rîne hât boten her gesant,
a queen of Rhine has messengers hither sent,

ez stât an disem brieve, ir recken hôchgenant.
it stands in this letter, you warriors high-named.

47 Si heget einen anger mit rôsen wol bekleit,
She tends a meadow with roses well clad,

der ist einer mîlen lanc und einer halben breit.
it is of-a mile long and of-a half broad.

darumbe gât ein mûre, ein vadem sîdîn.
there-about goes a wall, a thread silken.

trutz sî allen vürsten, daz ir keiner kome darîn.
defiance be to-all princes, that of-you none come there-in.

48 Des garten hüetent zwelve der aller küensten man,
The garden guard twelve the of-all boldest men,

sô man sie bî dem Rîne iender vinden kan.
as one them by the Rhine anywhere find can.

die ir des garten hüetent, die tuot si iu bekant:
who for-her the garden guard, those makes she to-you known:
der êrste ist ir vater, ein rîcher künec genant.
the first is her father, a rich king named.

Der ander heizet Gunther, der dritte Gêrnôt. 49
The second is-called Gunther, the third Gernot.
der vierde heizet Hagene, der enlât niht durch die nôt.
the fourth is-called Hagen, he leaves not for the need.
der vünfte heizet Volkêr, gar ein küener man.
the fifth is-called Volker, wholly a bold man.
der sehste heizet Pûsolt, der sibende Schrûtân.
the sixth is-called Pusold, the seventh Schrutan.

Der ahte heizet Ortwîn, gar küene, alsô man seit. 50
The eighth is-called Ortwin, wholly bold, as one says.
der niunde heizet Aspriân, des lîp ist unverzeit.
the ninth is-called Asprian, whose body is undaunted.
der zehende heizet Walther von dem Wasgenstein
the tenth is-called Walther of the Wasgenstein
und ist an dem Rîne der küensten vürsten ein.
and is on the Rhine of-the boldest princes one.

Der eilfte heizet Stûdenvuhs und hât gestriten wol, 51
The eleventh is-called Studenfuchs and has fought well,
der gît in den strîten den recken swæren zol.
he gives in the fights to-the warriors heavy toll.
der zwelfte heizet Sîvrit, ein helt ûz Niderlant,
the twelfth is-called Siegfried, a hero from Netherlands,
der strîtet nâch grôzen êren mit ellenthafter hant.
he fights after great honors with valiant hand.

52 Die recken wellen mit triuwen der rôsen pfleger sîn:
The warriors will with faith of-the roses tenders be:

trutze und widertrutze daz keiner kome darîn.
defiance and counter-defiance that none come there-in.

dar sült ir zwelve bringen, die den zwelven sîn gelîch.'
there shall you twelve bring, who to-the twelve be like.'

'waz süln sie dâ schicken?' sprach her Dietrîch.
'what shall they there do?' spoke sir Dietrich.

53 'Und gesigent die zwelve den in dem garten an,
'And (if)-win the twelve from-those in the garden on,

rôsen ze eime kranze gît man ie dem man,
roses to a wreath gives one ever to-the man,

ein helsen und ein küssen von der jungen künegîn,
an embrace and a kiss from the young queen,

und muoz vor allen recken iemer getiuret sîn.'
and must before all warriors ever esteemed be.'

54 'Numme dumme âmen!' sô sprach her Dietrîch,
'In-the-name of-the-Lord amen!' so spoke sir Dietrich,

'wie sint dise vrouwen sô rehte wunderlîch,
'how are these ladies so rightly wondrous,

daz ir vil selten keiniu wil nemen einen man,
that of-them very seldom any will take a man,

ich enhabe mit ime gestriten oder muoz in noch bestân.
I unless-have with him fought or must him yet attack.

55 Sleht er mich ze tôde oder sêre wunt,
(If)-slays he me to death or sorely wounded,

sô küsset er's minneclîche an ir rôten munt,
so kisses he-it lovingly on her red mouth,

darzuo hât er verdienet einen rôsenkranz.'
there-to has he earned a rose-wreath.'

'sô belîbet, herre von Berne, sô haltet ir iuwer houbet ganz!'
'so stay, lord of Bern, so keep you your head whole!'

Alsô sprach von Garte der alte Hiltebrant, 56
So spoke of Garda the old Hildebrand,

'aber ich wil rîten an den Rîn,' sô sprach der wîgant,
'but I will ride to the Rhine,' so spoke the fighter,

'vil lîhte wirt mir ein rôsenkranz von der künegîn,
'very easily becomes to-me a rose-wreath from the queen,

ein helsen und ein küssen: des muoz ich getiuret sîn.'
an embrace and a kiss: of-that must I esteemed be.'

Dô schemete sich her Dietrîch, daz er die rede hête getân. 57
Then shamed himself sir Dietrich, that he the speech had made.

er sprach: 'getriuwer Hiltebrant, du solt mich wizzen lân,
he spoke: 'faithful Hildebrand, thou shalt me know let,

wie daz wir mit êren komen an den Rîn.'
how that we with honors come to the Rhine.'

dô sprach der alte Hiltebrant: 'daz sol geschehen sîn.'
then spoke the old Hildebrand: 'that shall happened be.'

'Vil mê stât an dem brieve,' sprach der kapelân, 58
'Much more stands in the letter,' spoke the chaplain,

'trutze und widertrutze, ob ir ez getürret lân.
'defiance and counter-defiance, if you it dare leave.

komet ir niht ze dem Rîne, ir recke lobesam,
(if)-come you not to the Rhine, you warrior praiseworthy,

ir getürret niemer mêre an vürsten stat gestân.'
you dare never more in princes' place stand.'

59 ‘Dirre brief ist bœse,’ sprach von Berne der küene man,
‘This letter is evil,’ spoke of Bern the bold man,

‘des müezen die boten enkelten, den lîp verlorn hân.’
‘of-that must the messengers pay, the life lost have.’

zehen hundert ritter ir harnesch leiten an,
ten hundred knights their harness laid on,

vil manec schœniu vrouwe half bereiten ir man.
very many-a fair lady helped prepare her husband.

60 Dô entwichen in die geste niht umb ein kleinez hâr,
Then gave-way to-them the guests not by a little hair,

sie bunden ûf ir helme, daz sage ich iu vürwâr,
they bound on their helmets, that tell I you truly,

und griffen ze den swerten (sie wâren unverzeit)
and grasped to the swords (they were undaunted)

und nâmen ze den armen ir schilte wâren breit.
and took to the arms their shields were broad.

61 Der edeln herzoginne zergienc ir gleite zehant.
The noble duchess vanished her escort at-once.

si gienc mit trûregem muote, dâ si Wolfharten vant.
she went with sad spirit, where she Wolfhart found.

si sprach: ‘Wolfhart, herre, lâz dir sîn gekleit,
she spoke: ‘Wolfhart, lord, let to-thee be lamented,

vil tugenthafter ritter, daz mîn herzeleit.’
very virtuous knight, that my heart’s-grief.’

62 Si sprach: ‘der Bernære versinnet sich niht baz,
She spoke: ‘the Bernese bethinks himself not better,

er hât gein den gesten gewendet sînen haz.
he has against the guests turned his hate.

nu hilf den edeln gesten, des hâst du êre und vrum,
now help the noble guests, of-that hast thou honor and profit,
sô wil ich dir ze lône geben mînen magetuom.'
so will I to-thee to reward give my maidenhood.'

Des antwurte ir mit zühten der vil küene degen: 63
To-that answered her with courtesies the very bold thane:
'ich enkan deheiner vrouwen mit êren niht gepflegen:
'I can any lady with honors not tend:
mîn herze enist niht wîse, ez ist unzühte vol,
my heart is not wise, it is of-discourtesy full,
ez ist mîn grœstiu vröude, swenne ich vehten sol.
it is my greatest joy, whenever I fight shall.

Doch swer den edeln gesten hiute tuot kein leit, 64
Yet whoever to-the noble guests today does any grief,
den erslahe ich endelîche, daz habet ûf mînen eit.'
him slay I finally, that have upon my oath.'
des neic im dô vor liebe diu edel herzogîn.
for-that bowed to-him then for joy the noble duchess.
man zôch dar Wolharte daz guote ros sîn.
one drew there to-Wolfhart the good horse his.

Wolfhart der vil küene rief, daz ez durch den helm erdôz, 65
Wolfhart the very bold called, that it through the helmet resounded,
(sîn kraft und sîn sterke die wâren harte grôz):
(his power and his strength they were very great):
'ich hilfe hiute den gesten, daz wizzet alle gar.
'I help today the guests, that know all wholly.
her Dietrîch, lieber herre, nu nemet mîner rede war.
sir Dietrich, dear lord, now take of-my speech heed.

66 Ir, vil edeler vürste, gedenket rehte dran,
You, very noble prince, think rightly there-on,

ob ir ze boten sendet einen biderman,
if you as messenger send a worthy-man,

getörste er niht gewerben, drumb ir hêtet in gesant,
dared he not deliver, for-that you had him sent,

under allen recken müeste er sîn geschant.'
among all warriors must he be shamed.'

67 Des lobete in mit zühten der alte Hiltebrant:
For-that praised him with courtesies the old Hildebrand:

'nu lône dir got, Wolfhart, du stolzer wîgant!
'now reward thee God, Wolfhart, thou proud fighter!

ich hân selten gesehen sô vil dîner bescheidenheit,
I have seldom seen so much of-thy discretion,

ich spriche ez ûf mîne triuwe, alliu schande ist dir leit.'
I say it upon my faith, all shame is to-thee grievous.'

68 Dô sprach Hiltebrant der alte: 'vil lieber herre mîn,
Then spoke Hildebrand the old: 'very dear lord mine,

enpfâch nâch dînen êren baz die geste dîn:
receive after thy honors better the guests thine:

du solt sie dîner wirtschaft hie geniezen lân
thou shalt them of-thy hospitality here profit let

und tuo in daz beste, daz stât dir vil wol an.'
and do to-them the best, that stands thee very well on.'

69 Dô sprach der Bernære: 'getriuwer Hiltebrant,
Then spoke the Bernese: 'faithful Hildebrand,

nu rât mir daz beste, vil küener wîgant,
now counsel me the best, very bold fighter,

wie daz wir mit êren komen an den Rîn,
how that we with honors come to the Rhine,

daz wir die widertrutze trîben in dâ wider în.'
that we the counter-defiances drive them there back in.'

'Wir müezen ze dem Rîne,' sprach her Hiltebrant, 70
'We must to the Rhine,' spoke sir Hildebrand,

'dâ süln wir helme houwen,' sô sprach der wîgant,
'there shall we helmets hew,' so spoke the fighter,

'daz daz bluot dâhin vliuzet und gît den widerswal.'
'that the blood thither flows and gives the backwash.'

'danc habe,' sprach dô Wolfhart, 'sô wil ich ûf die wal.'
'thanks have,' spoke then Wolfhart, 'so will I upon the field.'

'Wol dan, ir werden geste,' sprach Wolfhart sâ zehant, 71
'Well thence, you worthy guests,' spoke Wolfhart straightway at-once,

'leit abe und lât behalten iuwer stehelîn gewant
'lay off and let keep your steel raiment

und ezzet mînes herren brôt und trinket sînen wîn,
and eat my lord's bread and drink his wine,

man gît es iu willeclîche, swie lange ir hie wellet sîn.'
one gives it to-you willingly, however long you here will be.'

Des vröuten sich die geste mit vrœlîcher art. 72
Of-that rejoiced themselves the guests with joyful manner.

vil manec liehter halsberc dô behalten wart.
very many-a bright hauberk then kept was.

pfeller unde samît leiten sie mit vröuden an.
silk and samite laid they with joys on.

man sach die edeln geste zühteclîche gân.
one saw the noble guests courteously go.

73 Dô gap man den küenen recken eine grôze kraft,
Then gave one to-the bold warriors a great plenty,
daz man ûf der vürsten hove heizet wirtschaft.
which one upon the princes' court calls hospitality.
dô beliben sie ze Berne unz an den zehenden tac,
then remained they at Bern until to the tenth day,
die wîle manec ritter mit in kurzewîle pflac.
the while many-a knight with them pastime held.

74 Zehen hundert marc goldes gap in der Berner dô,
Ten hundred marks of-gold gave to-them the Bernese then,
die hôchgelobeten geste machete er alle vrô
the high-praised guests made he all glad
und kleite sie alle gelîche in guot pfellergewant,
and clad them all alike in good silk-garment,
beslagen wol mit golde: daz nâmen sie zehant.
mounted well with gold: that took they at-once.

75 Dô gienc der herzoge mit vünf hundert sîner man
Then went the duke with five hundred of-his men
vil gezogenlîche vür den Berner stân.
very courteously before the Bernese stand.
er sprach: 'vil edeler vürste, möht ez in hulden sîn,
he spoke: 'very noble prince, might it in favors be,
den urloup hêten wir gerne: wir wolten an den Rîn.'
the leave had we gladly: we would to the Rhine.'

76 Dô sprach der voget von Berne, der degen unverzeit:
Then spoke the lord of Bern, the thane undaunted:
'mîn urloup und mîn hulde diu ist iu unverseit.
'my leave and my favor that is to-you unrefused.

ich geleite iuch ûz mîm lande mit vünf hundert man.
I escort you out-of my land with five hundred men.
welt ir hie langer belîben, daz ist liebe mir getân.'
(if)-will you here longer remain, that is dear to-me done.'

Des dankete im tugentlîche der herzoge Sabîn: 77
For-that thanked him virtuously the duke Sabin:
'vil edeler voget von Berne, wir wolten an den Rîn.'
'very noble lord of Bern, we would to the Rhine.'
die herren von dem Rîne wurden in stahel dô gekleit.
the lords from the Rhine were in steel then clad.
der edel vürste von Berne dô selbe mit in reit
the noble prince of Bern then himself with them rode

Mit vünf hundert sîner man, sô er sie tiurest vant. 78
With five hundred of-his men, as he them dearest found.
er geleite sie mit êren durch Lampartenlant.
he escorted them with honors through Lombardy.
dô sie von Berne kâmen und Garte sâhen an,
when they from Bern came and Garda saw on,
dô sprach der herzoge ze dem Berner lobesam:
then spoke the duke to the Bernese praiseworthy:

'Nu kêret wider, herre, heim in iuwer lant, 79
'Now turn back, lord, home into your land,
ir hât uns verre gedienet mit [iuwern] helden hôchgenant.
you have to-us far served with [your] heroes high-named.
swaz ir nu welt enpieten der keiserlîchen meit,
whatever you now will send to-the imperial maiden,
daz wirt ir endelîche dâ von mir geseit.'
that is to-her finally there by me told.'

80 Dô sprach der Bernære: 'nu saget der künegîn,
Then spoke the Bernese: 'now tell the queen,

si müeze ir widertrutze selbe trîben în,
she must her counter-defiance herself drive in,

die si mir hât enpoten in mîn eigen lant.
which she to-me has sent into my own land.

des mac wol enkelten manec küener wîgant.
of-that may well pay many-a bold fighter.

81 Saget ir, ich habe ze Berne rôsen alsô vil,
Tell her, I have at Bern roses as many,

wan daz ich ir hôchvart niht übersehen wil.
but that I her pride not overlook will.

sehzec tûsent recken bringe ich über Rîn,
sixty thousand warriors bring I over Rhine,

die wol getürren vehten umb rôsenkrenzelîn.
who well dare fight for rose-wreaths.

82 Dannoch bringe ich zwelve ûf den grüenen plân,
Besides bring I twelve upon the green field,

die in dem rôsengarten wol ir zwelve getürren bestân.'
who in the rose-garden well her twelve dare attack.'

urloup nam mit zühten der von Brâbant.
leave took with courtesies he of Brabant.

der edel vürste von Berne reit heim in sîn lant.
the noble prince of Bern rode home into his land.

83 Kriemhilte der küneginne wurden diu mære geseit,
To-Kriemhild the queen were the tidings told,

des vröute sich heimlîche diu keiserlîche meit.
of-that rejoiced herself secretly the imperial maiden.

Kriemhilt diu küneginne dô niht langer beit,
Kriemhild the queen then not longer waited,
mit ir juncvrouwen si sich dô bereit.
with her young-ladies she herself then prepared.

Diu junge herzoginne gienc ir an der hant, 84
The young duchess went to-her at the hand,
die wolte si ze wîbe geben deme von Brâbant.
whom would she to woman give to-him of Brabant.
[diu selbe juncvrouwe truoc ein kleit an,
[*the same young-lady wore a dress on,*
dardurch dâ schein ir lîp, der was sô wolgetân.
there-through there shone her body, which was so well-made.

Ir arme wâren wîz, blanc als ein hermelîn. 85
Her arms were white, bright as an ermine.
under den juncvrouwen mohte si diu schœnste sîn.]
among the young-ladies might she the fairest be.]
mit den selben meiden si ime engegene gienc,
with the same maidens she him toward went,
wie rehte güetlîche in diu künegîn enpfienc:
how rightly kindly him the queen received:

'Wis gote willekomen, ein herzoge ûz Brâbant! 86
'Be to-God welcome, a duke from Brabant!
waz enpiutet uns der von Berne in unser eigen lant?'
what announces to-us he of Bern into our own land?'
er sprach: 'edeliu künegîn, des werdet ir wol gewar,
he spoke: 'noble queen, of-that become you well aware,
er wil vür iuch bringen eine ungevüege schar.
he will before you bring a monstrous troop.

87 Iu enpiutet der von Berne, vil edeliu künegîn,
To-you announces he of Bern, very noble queen,

ir müezet iuwern widertrutz trîben wider în,
you must your counter-defiance drive back in,

den ir im hât enpoten in sîn eigen lant,
which you to-him have sent into his own land,

und des müge wol enkelten manec stolzer wîgant.
and of-that may well pay many-a proud fighter.

88 Er sprichet, er habe ze Berne rôsen alsô vil,
He says, he have at Bern roses as many,

wan daz er iuwer hôchvart niht übersehen wil.
but that he your pride not overlook will.

sehzec tûsent recken bringet er über Rîn,
sixty thousand warriors brings he over Rhine,

die wol getürren vehten umb rôsenkrenzelîn.
who well dare fight for rose-wreaths.

89 Darzuo bringet er zwelve ûf den grüenen plân,
There-to brings he twelve upon the green field,

die in dem rôsengarten iuwer zwelve wol türren bestân.'
who in the rose-garden your twelve well dare attack.'

'wol mich, ein werder vürste, ein herzoge ûz Brâbant,
'well-for me, a worthy prince, a duke from Brabant,

daz ich dich ie gein Berne ze boten hân gesant!
that I thee ever toward Bern as messenger have sent!

90 Des gât ez an ein houwen, daz man siht daz bluot,
Of-that goes it to a hewing, that one sees the blood,

sô siht man helme schrôten manegen ritter guot.
so sees one helmets cleave many-a knight good.

swer vrume boten sendet, der verliuset niht daran.
whoever brave messengers sends, he loses not there-on.
nu wil ich dir geben, swaz ich dir gelobet hân.'
now will I to-thee give, what I to-thee vowed have.'

Dô gap si ime ze wîbe die jungen herzogîn 91
Then gave she him to woman the young duchess
und darzuo ein herzoctuom, daz solte sîn eigen sîn.
and there-to a duchy, that should his own be.
er sprach: 'vil edeliu künegîn, möht ez mit [iuwern] hulden sîn,
he spoke: 'very noble queen, might it with [your] favors be,
sô vuorte ich gerne ze lande die lieben vrouwen mîn.
so led I gladly to land the dear lady mine.

Mit iuwerm rôsengarten wil ich niht haben pfliht.' 92
With your rose-garden will I not have dealing.'
'nu vüere sie, swar du wilt, ich enwer dir es niht.'
'now lead her, whither thou wilt, I forbid to-thee it not.'
dô neic er ir mit zühten, der herre von Brâbant,
then bowed he to-her with courtesies, the lord of Brabant,
und vuorte sie vrœlîche in sîn eigen lant.
and led her joyfully into his own land.

Hildebrand matches Kriemhild's champions: Dietrich against Siegfried, Wolfhart against Pusold, Sigestap against the giant Ortwin, Heime against Schrutan, Witege against Asprian, young Ortwin against Volker, Eckehart against Hagen, Helmschrot against Gernot, Amelolt against Gunther, Hildebrand against Gibich, and his brother the monk Ilsan against Studenfuchs. For Walther they need Dietleib of Styria; Sigestap rides to find him, past Biterolf and the margrave at Bechelaren, and brings him from Vienna to Bern, where Dietrich gathers sixty thousand men.

93 Dô sprach der von Berne: 'getriuwer Hiltebrant,
Then spoke he of Bern: 'faithful Hildebrand,

die zwelve in dem garten sint dir wol bekant:
the twelve in the garden are to-thee well known:

rât, wâ wir zwelve vinden, die sie getürren bestân.'
counsel, where we twelve find, who them dare attack.'

dô sprach der alte Hiltebrant: 'dâ muoz ich wîle zuo hân.
then spoke the old Hildebrand: 'there must I while to have.

94 Sîvrit von Niderlande ist iu wol bekant,
Siegfried of Netherlands is to-you well known,

der strîtet nâch grôzen êren mit ellenthafter hant,
he fights after great honors with valiant hand,

der hât bî sînen zîten strîtes vil getân.
he has in his times of-battle much done.

mit dem müezet ir vehten, ein vürste lobesam.
with him must you fight, a prince praiseworthy.

95 Pûsolt den helt erwegen den bestât Wolfhart der degen.'
Pusold the hero resolute him attacks Wolfhart the thane.'

dô sprach Wolfhart der küene: 'des wil ich mich erwegen,
then spoke Wolfhart the bold: 'of-that will I myself resolve,

und slahe ich in ze tôde, er ist ein ungetoufter man,
and (if)-slay I him to death, he is an unbaptized man,

des muoz ich mich erwegen, ich ensünde niht daran.'
of-that must I myself resolve, I sin not there-in.'

'Wer bestât den risen, der dâ heizet Ortwîn? 96
'Who attacks the giant, who there is-called Ortwin?

der wil under allen recken der küensten einer sîn.
he will among all warriors of-the boldest one be.

durch vorhte er nie enwolte keinen strît gelân.'
for fear he never would no battle leave.'

'Sigestap der junge sol uns den bestân.'
'Sigestap the young shall for-us him attack.'

'Wer bestât den risen, der dâ heizet Schrûtân? 97
'Who attacks the giant, who there is-called Schrutan?

dem sint die risen alle durch vorhte undertân.'
to-him are the giants all for fear subject.'

'dem ich ouch sînen gelîchen vil wol vinden kan:
'for-whom I also his like very well find can:

Heime der ritter küene sol uns den risen wol bestân.'
Heime the knight bold shall for-us the giant well attack.'

'Wer bestât denn einen risen, der heizet Aspriân? 98
'Who attacks then a giant, who is-called Asprian?

der treit zwei swert mit ime, dâmite er vehten kan.'
he carries two swords with him, there-with he fight can.'

'gein deme wil ich schicken einen stolzen jungen man:
'against him will I send a proud young man:

Witege der vil starke der mac in harte wol bestân.'
Witege the very strong he may him very well attack.'

99 ‘Wer bestât nu Volkêren, den ûzerwelten degen?
‘Who attacks now Volker, the chosen thane?

der ist in herten stürmen gein hunderten erwegen.
he is in hard assaults against hundreds resolute.

er kan ouch wol videln und wil niht der bœste sîn.’
he can also well fiddle and will not the worst be.’

‘mit deme lân wir vehten den jungen Ortwîn.’
‘with him let we fight the young Ortwin.’

100 ‘Wer bestât uns denne Hagenen, den mortgrimmen man?
‘Who attacks for-us then Hagen, the murder-grim man?

der getar ein breitez her al eine wol bestân.’
he dares a broad army all alone well attack.’

‘deme ich sînen gelîchen vil wol vinden kan:
‘for-whom I his like very well find can:

Eckehart der starke sol uns den bestân.’
Eckehart the strong shall for-us him attack.’

101 ‘Wer bestât den jungen, den künec Gêrnôt?
‘Who attacks the young-one, the king Gernot?

der hât vil der recken verwundet in den tôt.
he has many of-the warriors wounded into the death.

er hât in kurzen jâren erslagen manegen man.’
he has in short years slain many-a man.’

‘Helmschrôt der junge sol uns den bestân.’
‘Helmschrot the young shall for-us him attack.’

102 ‘Wer bestât Gunthêren, den ûzerwelten degen?
‘Who attacks Gunther, the chosen thane?

der getar in herten strîten wâgen wol sîn leben.’
he dares in hard battles stake well his life.’

‘mit deme lân wir vehten mînen bruoder Amelolt,
‘with him let we fight my brother Amelolt,

der verzeite nie in stürmen, darumb bin ich im holt.’
he despaired never in assaults, there-for am I to-him favorable.’

‘Wer bestât ir vater, den künec hôchgeborn?’ 103
‘Who attacks their father, the king high-born?’

‘daz tuon ich’, sprach Hiltebrant, der degen ûzerkorn,
‘that do I’, spoke Hildebrand, the thane chosen,

‘der selbe künec Gibeche ist gar ein küener man.
‘the same king Gibich is wholly a bold man.

swie grâ mir der bart ist, er wirt es niht erlân.’
however gray to-me the beard is, he will-be of-it not spared.’

‘Wer bestât uns Stûdenvuhsen, einen recken von dem Rîn? 104
‘Who attacks for-us Studenfuchs, a warrior from the Rhine?

der wil under den recken der küensten einer sîn.’
he will among the warriors of-the boldest one be.’

‘dem ich nu sînen gelîchen niender vinden kan,
‘for-whom I now his like nowhere find can,

in bestüende dan mîn bruoder, der starke münech Ilsân.’
him should-attack but my brother, the strong monk Ilsan.’

‘Noch weiz ich dort einen, vor deme ich sorge hân: 105
‘Still know I there one, before whom I care have:

wer sol uns in den rôsen den zwelften helt bestân?
who shall for-us in the roses the twelfth hero attack?

der ist geheizen Walther von dem Wasgenstein
he is called Walther of the Wasgenstein

und ist an dem Rîne der küensten recken ein.’
and is on the Rhine of-the boldest warriors one.’

106 ‘Deme ich sînen kempfen, weiz got, niht vinden kan,
‘For-whom I his champion, God knows, not find can,

wan Dietleip von Stîre, der ist ein starker man.
but Dietleib of Styria, he is a strong man.

hülf uns der degen junge, vil lieber herre mîn,
should-help us the thane young, very dear lord mine,

sô möhten wir mit vröuden wol rîten an den Rîn.’
so might we with joys well ride to the Rhine.’

107 Dô sprach der wol gezogene von Berne her Dietrîch:
Then spoke the well bred of Bern sir Dietrich:

‘ich hân ime gedienet kleine, daz riuwet iezuo mich.
‘I have him served little, that grieves now me.

wist er diu rehten mære von Kriemhilte übermuot,
should-know he the right tidings of Kriemhild’s arrogance,

sô rite mit uns an den Rîn der edel degen guot.
so would-ride with us to the Rhine the noble thane good.

108 Hêt ich nu einen boten’, sprach her Dietrîch,
Had I now a messenger’, spoke sir Dietrich,

‘der mir wolte werben die boteschaft endelîch,
‘who for-me would deliver the message zealously,

mit deme sô wolte ich teilen bürge unde lant.’
with him so would I share castles and land.’

dô sprach der junge Sigestap: ‘ich wirbe ez al zehant.’
then spoke the young Sigestap: ‘I deliver it all at-once.’

109 Des dankete ime in zühten der Berner unverzeit.
For-that thanked him in courtesies the Bernese undaunted.

Sigestap der junge gein Stîre balde reit,
Sigestap the young toward Styria quickly rode,

er suochte Dietleiben, den vil snellen degen.
he sought Dietleib, the very swift thane.

gein vünf hundert rittern was er in strîte erwegen.
against five hundred knights was he in battle resolute.

Sigestap der junge gein Stîre geriten kam, 110
Sigestap the young toward Styria ridden came,

als eime degen küene harte wol gezam.
as to-a thane bold very well befitted.

dô enpfienc in tugentlîche Biterolf zehant,
then received him virtuously Biterolf at-once,

er vrâgete in der mære: diu tete er ime bekant.
he asked him of-the tidings: them made he to-him known.

Dô sprach der alte Biterolf: 'ir müget tôren sîn, 111
Then spoke the old Biterolf: 'you may fools be,

daz ir durch rôsen willen rîtet an den Rîn,
that you for roses' sake ride to the Rhine,

und daz ir welt volgen einer unsinnigen meit,
and that you will follow a senseless maiden,

diu durch ir grôze affenheit daz mort zesamene treit.'
who through her great folly the murder together brings.'

Dô sprach aber Sigestap: 'ez enwirt mir niemer leit. 112
Then spoke again Sigestap: 'it becomes to-me never grievous.

ich bin deste holder der keiserlîchen meit,
I am the more-favorable to-the imperial maiden,

daz si gerne siht vehten die recken unverzeit.
that she gladly sees fight the warriors undaunted.

des versuochet dâ manec ritter die sîne manheit.'
of-that tests there many-a knight the his manhood.'

113 Dô sprach der alte Biterolf: 'got gebe iu allen heil,
Then spoke the old Biterolf: 'God give you all salvation,

daz ir von dem Rîne bringet rôsen ein michel teil.
that you from the Rhine bring of-roses a great part.

Dietleip ist niht hie heime, er ist ze Bechelâr
Dietleib is not here at-home, he is at Bechelaren

bî dem milten marcgrâven, daz sage ich dir vürwâr.'
with the generous margrave, that tell I thee truly.'

114 Sigestap der junge urloup von dannen nam
Sigestap the young leave from thence took

und reit hin gein Bechelâren, der degen lobesam.
and rode thither toward Bechelaren, the thane praiseworthy.

dô enpfienc in tugentlîche der [milte] marcgrâve starc
then received him virtuously the [generous] margrave strong

und darzuo manec ritter, ir keiner daz verbarc.
and there-to many-a knight, of-them none that hid.

115 Sie vrâgeten in der mære, diu wurden in kunt getân.
They asked him of-the tidings, they were to-them known made.

dô der milte marcgrâve diu mære dô vernam,
when the generous margrave the tidings then heard,

er sprach: 'rîtet ir ze dem Rîne, daz ist kintlîch getân.
he spoke: '(if)-ride you to the Rhine, that is childishly done.

ir möhtet alsô sanfte ze Berne rôsen gezogen hân.
you might as easily at Bern roses grown have.

116 Die zwelve in dem garten sint mir wol bekant,
The twelve in the garden are to-me well known,

daz sint wol die küensten, die haben alliu lant.
those are full the boldest, that have all lands.

werdet ir in dem garten sigelôs oder erslagen,
(if)-become you in the garden victoryless or slain,

sô wirt alliu disiu werlt ir spot ûf iuch tragen,
so will all this world its mockery upon you bear,

[daz ir alle volget einer vâlandîn
[*that you all follow a she-devil*

und welt durch rôsen willen rîten an den Rîn.']
and will for roses' sake ride to the Rhine.']

Dô sprach Sigestap der junge: 'des hân wir uns erwegen, 117
Then spoke Sigestap the young: 'of-that have we ourselves resolved,

daz wir in dem garten strîtes wellen pflegen.
that we in the garden of-battle will take-care.

swer uns hât vür tôren, der tôret sêre daran.
whoever us has for fools, he is-foolish sorely there-in.

sie slahent uns niht sêre, komen wir ûf den plân.
they slay us not sorely, (if)-come we upon the field.

[wir hân in schiere vergolten mit starken slegen grôz,
[*we have them quickly repaid with strong blows great,*

wir machen sie under den helmen aller vröuden blôz.]
we make them under the helmets of-all joys bare.]

Vünde ich niuwan Dietleiben, den küenen jungen man, 118
Should-find I only Dietleib, the bold young man,

ob er uns in dem garten wolte bî gestân,
whether he us in the garden would by stand,

zergangen wær unser swære', sprach der vürste klâr,
vanished were our heaviness', spoke the prince bright,

'und vröute sich mîn gemüete, daz sage ich iu vürwâr.'
'and would-rejoice itself my mind, that tell I you truly.'

119 Des dankete ime mit zühten der milte marcman:
For-that thanked him with courtesies the generous march-man:

'Dietleip ist niht hie heime, wil ich dich wizzen lân:
'Dietleib is not here at-home, will I thee know let:

er ist ze den Sibenbürgen, dâ ist er worden wunt
he is at the Seven-Castles, there is he become wounded

von eime merwunder des lîbes ungesunt.'
by a sea-monster of-the body unsound.'

120 Dô sprach Sigestap der junge: 'ich muoz ze ime dar.
Then spoke Sigestap the young: 'I must to him there.

jâ sol man in den rôsen werden wol gewar,
yea shall one in the roses become well aware,

* * *
(lacuna)

swenn einer gein dem andern durch die rôsen beginnet waten.'
whenever one against the other through the roses begins wade.'

121 Dô sprach der marcgrâve: 'got gebe iu allen heil,
Then spoke the margrave: 'God give you all salvation,

daz ir von dem Rîne bringet rôsen ein michel teil.
that you from the Rhine bring of-roses a great part.

ich spriche ez zewâre, ich gan iu der êren wol.'
I say it truly, I grant you the honors well.'

Sigestap reit von dannen, als er von rehte sol.
Sigestap rode from thence, as he by right shall.

122 Er wolte zen Sibenbürgen. dô er gein Wiene kam,
He would to-the Seven-Castles. when he toward Vienna came,

dô vant er Dietleiben vor eime münster stân.
then found he Dietleib before a minster stand.

dâ wart er schône enpfangen von dem degene dô.
there was he finely received by the thane then.
daz er in hête vunden, des wâren sie beide vrô.
that he him had found, of-that were they both glad.

Dô vrâgete er in der mære, diu wurden im kunt getân. 123
Then asked he him of-the tidings, they were to-him known made.
'welher ist der eine, der mich sol bestân?'
'which is the one, who me shall attack?'
'er ist geheizen Walther von dem Wasgenstein
'he is called Walther of the Wasgenstein
und ist an dem Rîne der küensten vürsten ein.'
and is on the Rhine of-the boldest princes one.'

'Jâ daz tuon ich gerne, ich hœre von deme wol sagen, 124
'Yea that do I gladly, I hear of him well tell,
er habe bî sînen zîten recken vil erslagen,
he have in his times warriors many slain,
und sleht er mich ze tôde, er ist ein biderman.
and (if)-slays he me to death, he is a worthy-man.
ich wil in ûf mîne triuwe willeclîche bestân.'
I will him upon my faith willingly attack.'

Dietleip unde Sigestap kêrten von Wiene dan. 125
Dietleib and Sigestap turned from Vienna thence.
dô kâmen wol vünf hundert Dietleibes man.
then came full five hundred Dietleib's men.
dô zogeten sie gein Garte ûf einen anger breit.
then moved they toward Garda upon a meadow broad.
dem edeln Bernære wurden diu mære geseit.
to-the noble Bernese were the tidings told.

126 Mit vünf hundert rittern er gein ime reit.
With five hundred knights he toward him rode.

er enpfienc sie wol mit êren, die recken unverzeit.
he received them well with honors, the warriors undaunted.

er umbvienc in mit den armen, Dietleiben den jungen man,
he embraced him with the arms, Dietleib the young man,

er halste in unde kuste in, als ime wol gezam.
he hugged him and kissed him, as him well befitted.

127 Er sprach: 'sage mir, Dietleip, ûf die triuwe dîn,
He spoke: 'tell me, Dietleib, upon the faith thine,

ob dich iht müejen die trutze von der künegîn,
whether thee anything trouble the defiances from the queen,

die si uns hât enpoten in unser eigen lant.
which she to-us has sent into our own land.

ob wir daz niht rechen, sô werden wir alle geschant.'
if we that not avenge, so are we all shamed.'

128 'Sie mügen uns wol müejen', sprach Dietleib der degen,
'They may us well trouble', spoke Dietleib the thane,

'ê ich sie vertrüege, ich verlür ê mîn leben.
'before I them should-endure, I would-lose rather my life.

jâ wil ich in dem garten der küensten einen bestân.
yea will I in the garden of-the boldest one attack.

mir muoz ein krenzelîn werden, ob ich'z gevüegen kan.'
to-me must a little-wreath become, if I-it manage can.'

129 Sie zogeten mit einander gein Berne in die stat.
They moved with one-another toward Bern into the city.

der liute und ouch der rosse mit êren man dô pflac.
of-the people and also of-the horses with honors one then took-care.

mit ezzen und mit trinken pflac man ir aller wol,
with eating and with drinking tended one them all well,

alsô ein edeler vürste ze rehte sîner geste sol.
as a noble prince by right his guests shall.

Sus wâren sie ze Berne unz an den sehsten tac. 130
Thus were they at Bern until to the sixth day.

die wîle manec ritter dâ kurzewîle pflac.
the while many-a knight there pastime held.

dô samente der von Berne sehzec tûsent man,
then gathered he of Bern sixty thousand men,

die kâmen bî einander ûf einen grüenen plân.
they came by one-another upon a green field.

III · THE MONK ILSAN

Dietrich's sixty thousand camp before the cloister at Isenburg, and the monk Ilsan, enraged to see them on its land, arms and rides out to fight them alone. His brother Hildebrand rides to meet him, gives way in the joust, and bares his head, and once he has told him of Kriemhild's garden, Ilsan agrees to ride to the Rhine if his abbot allows. The abbot refuses until Ilsan threatens the brothers, then asks for a wreath; Ilsan vows one to each of his fifty-two brothers, who pray aloud for his return while secretly cursing him and wishing him dead.

Noch hêten sie niht alle die zwelve ûz erkorn. 131
Still had they not all the twelve out chosen.

'wie bringen wir ûz dem klôster den münech wolgeborn?'
'how bring we out-of the cloister the monk well-born?'

dô zogete der von Berne mit sehzec tûsent man
then moved he of Bern with sixty thousand men

vil balde gein Îsenbürge ûf einen grüenen plân.
very quickly toward Isenburg upon a green field.

132 Dô sluoc man ûf den herren vil manec schœne gezelt
Then pitched one for the lords very many-a fair tent
vür daz selbe klôster ûf ein wîtez velt.
before the same cloister upon a wide field.
dô gienc der münech Ilsân eines morgens vür ein wer:
then went the monk Ilsan one morning before a weir:
er sach ûf der heiden ligen ein vil breitez her.
he saw upon the heath lie a very broad army.

133 Sie lâgen ûf ir eigen, daz was im alsô zorn.
They lay upon his own, that was to-him so anger.
'waz diutet disiu hervart?' sprach der münech ûzerkorn,
'what means this army-march?' spoke the monk chosen,
'ach rîcher got von himel, wie sol ez nu ergân?
'ah rich God from heaven, how shall it now come-about?
nu wære ich gein gote vil gerne ein guoter man.
now were I toward God very gladly a good man.

134 Des enwellen übel herren und bœse liute niht.
That will evil lords and wicked people not.
ich hebe mich wider an den mort, swaz mir dâvon geschiht.'
I raise myself again to the murder, whatever to-me there-of happens.'
dô verkêrte sich diu varwe an dem grimmen man:
then changed itself the color on the grim man:
gel und bî wîlen grüene sîn varwe wart getân.
yellow and at times green his color was made.

135 Sich samente sîn gemüete, diu übel was im komen.
Itself gathered his mind, the evil was to-him come.
dô wurden dem guoten bruoder sîne heilegen sinne benomen.
then were to-the good brother his holy senses taken.

daz sâhen sîne bruoder an dem vürsten hôchgeborn,
that saw his brothers in the prince high-born,

daz er was erzürnet. sie vorhten alle sînen zorn.
that he was angered. they feared all his anger.

Nieman getorste in vrâgen, waz im wære geschehen. 136
No-one dared him ask, what to-him were happened.

er sprach: 'ich hân ûf der heiden vil manegen man gesehen.
he spoke: 'I have upon the heath very many-a man seen.

swie wir darumbe gebâren, daz tuot uns sicher nôt.
however we there-about behave, that does to-us surely need.

nu helfet mir ez rechen, oder iuch verteilet got.
now help me it avenge, or you condemns God.

Besetzet iuwer klôster, vil lieben bruoder mîn, 137
Garrison your cloister, very dear brothers mine,

und wâpent mich vil balde in die ringe stehelîn,
and arm me very quickly in the rings steel,

sô wil ich zuo ze in rîten ûf die heiden breit.
so will I thither to them ride upon the heath broad.

daz sie dâ her sint komen, daz mac in werden leit.
that they there hither are come, that may to-them become grief.

Ich wil sie bestân al eine, die sehzec tûsent man. 138
I will them attack all alone, the sixty thousand men.

sie rûment mir den anger, ob ich'z gevüegen kan,
they clear for-me the meadow, if I-it manage can,

ez ensî dan, daz mir breche daz swert in mîner hant,
it unless-be then, that to-me break the sword in my hand,

vil manege tiefe wunden tuon ich in bekant.'
very many deep wounds make I to-them known.'

139 Dô wart der münech Ilsân in stahel wol bereit.
Then was the monk Ilsan in steel well prepared.

wie gar vermezzenlîche er ûz dem klôster reit!
how wholly daringly he out-of the cloister rode!

einen schaft vil grôzen den vuorte er vor der hant.
a shaft very great that carried he before the hand.

er îlte über'z gevilde, der küene wîgant.
he hastened over-the field, the bold fighter.

140 Des wart gewar zem êrsten der alte Hiltebrant,
Of-that became aware at-the first the old Hildebrand,

daz der münech Ilsân ûz dem klôster kam gerant.
that the monk Ilsan out-of the cloister came running.

dô sprach der alte Hiltebrant: 'vil lieber herre mîn,
then spoke the old Hildebrand: 'very dear lord mine,

seht ir dort einen rîten? ir sült sicher sîn,
see you there one ride? you shall sure be,

141 Der hât in sîme herzen und ouch in sîme wân,
He has in his heart and also in his thought,

er welle diz vil grôze her al eine wol bestân.
he will this very great army all alone well attack.

ich wil gein ime rîten, ez ist der bruoder mîn,
I will toward him ride, it is the brother mine,

daz ich im künne gesagen, wer dise herren sîn.
that I to-him can tell, who these lords are.

142 Und kæme er sus in ditze her, daz sage ich iu vürwâr,
If should-come he thus into this army, that tell I you truly,

ê er uns rehte erkante, slüeg er sich mit der schar.
before he us rightly recognized, would-fight he himself with the troop.

wol kenne ich sînen unsite und sîne ellenthafte hant.'
well know I his ill-manner and his valiant hand.'

den helm er dô mit vlîze ûf sîn houbet bant.
the helmet he then with diligence upon his head bound.

Sîn ros zôch man im dar. wie balde er drûf gesaz! 143
His horse drew one to-him there. how quickly he thereon sat!

Hiltebrant der alte sîner wîsheit niht vergaz.
Hildebrand the old his wisdom not forgot.

wie gar ritterlîche er gein sîme bruoder reit!
how wholly knightly he toward his brother rode!

ein sper nam ouch der wîse, der degen unverzeit.
a spear took also the wise-one, the thane undaunted.

Dô wart er mit nîde von dem müneche ane gerant. 144
Then was he with hatred by the monk on charged.

dô entweich im an der juste der alte Hiltebrant.
then gave-way to-him at the joust the old Hildebrand.

sînen helm liehten er von dem houpte brach.
his helmet bright he from the head broke.

dô der münech Ilsân sînen bruoder ane sach,
when the monk Ilsan his brother on looked,

Dô sprach der münech Ilsân: 'waz hân ich dir getân? 145
Then spoke the monk Ilsan: 'what have I to-thee done?

du soltest durch mînen willen dise reise hân gelân.
thou shouldst for my sake this journey have left.

und hêten iu mîne bruoder ie getân kein leit,
and had to-you my brothers ever done any grief,

ich wære es selbe ein recher, daz habe ûf mînen eit,
I were of-it myself an avenger, that have upon my oath,

146 Wan daz ir uns verwüestet unser eigen gar.
But that you for-us lay-waste our own wholly.

und wæret ir ander liute, diu iuwer michel schar
and were you other people, the your great troop

möhte mit keinen êren von mir komen niht,
might with no honors from me come not,

wan allez iuwer strîten daz wære gein mir ein wiht.
for all your fighting that were against me a nothing.

147 Sol daz klôster niht geniezen der mîner manheit?
Shall the cloister not profit of-the my manhood?

bint ûf den helm vil schiere, dir sî widerseit.'
bind on the helmet very quickly, to-thee be defied.'

des antwurte ime in zühten der alte Hiltebrant:
to-that answered him in courtesies the old Hildebrand:

'noch enist dir unser reise ze rehte niht bekant.
'still is to-thee our journey by right not known.

148 Uns enpiutet von dem Rîne ein jungiu künegîn.
To-us announces from the Rhine a young queen.

ir vater heizet Gibeche, gewaltec über Rîn.
her father is-called Gibich, powerful over Rhine.

si ist ein geborniu künegîn, sô man uns von ir seit.
she is a born queen, as one us of her tells.

Kriemhilt ist si geheizen, diu keiserlîche meit.
Kriemhild is she called, the imperial maiden.

149 Si hât einen garten, mit rôsen wol bekleit,
She has a garden, with roses well clad,

der ist einer mîlen lanc und einer halben breit.
it is of-a mile long and of-a half broad.

des garten hüetent zwelve der aller küensten man,
the garden guard twelve the of-all boldest men,

sô man sie bî dem Rîne iender vinden kan.
as one them by the Rhine anywhere find can.

Dar süln wir zwelve bringen, die sie türren dâ bestân. 150
There shall we twelve bring, who them dare there attack.

der rôsen ze eime kranze gît man dâ ie dem man,
of-the roses to a wreath gives one there ever to-the man,

ein helsen und ein küssen von der künegîn.
an embrace and a kiss from the queen.

ouch sol er vor den recken getiuret iemer sîn.
also shall he before the warriors esteemed ever be.

Der helde hân wir eilve, die sint der mære vrô. 151
Of-the heroes have we eleven, they are of-the tidings glad.

woltest du mit dem zwelften, bruoder, strîten dô,
wouldst thou with the twelfth, brother, fight then,

sô wære dir mîn herre mit ganzen triuwen holt,
so were to-thee my lord with whole faith favorable,

ouch gæb er dir willeclîche beidiu silber unde golt.
also would-give he thee willingly both silver and gold.

Wær ez daz uns gelünge, hernâch über tûsent jâr 152
Were it that to-us it-succeeded, hereafter over thousand years

man von uns seite und sünge, daz sage ich dir vürwâr.
one of us would-tell and would-sing, that tell I thee truly.

wilt du doch niht strîten, vil lieber bruoder mîn,
(if)-wilt thou yet not fight, very dear brother mine,

sô rît durch mînen willen doch mit uns an den Rîn.'
so ride for my sake yet with us to the Rhine.'

153 Dô sprach der münech Ilsân: 'lieber bruoder mîn,
Then spoke the monk Ilsan: 'dear brother mine,
erloubet mir'z der abbet, ich rite an den Rîn.
(if)-allows me-it the abbot, I would-ride to the Rhine.
kume ich in den garten, des enkiltet manec man.
(if)-come I into the garden, of-that pays many-a man.
doch getar ich die zwelve al eine wol bestân.'
yet dare I the twelve all alone well attack.'

154 Ze dem apte reit her Dietrîch und Dietleip der degen,
To the abbot rode sir Dietrich and Dietleib the thane,
sie kunden wol nâch êren schœner zühte pflegen,
they could well after honors of-fair courtesy take-care,
Witege unde Heime nâch ritterlîchen siten.
Witege and Heime after knightly customs.
mit in kam ouch Eckehart getriuwelîche geriten.
with them came also Eckehart faithfully ridden.

155 Gein in gienc der abbet mit sîner bruoderschaft.
Toward them went the abbot with his brotherhood.
er enpfienc die geste mit ir grôzer kraft.
he received the guests with their great host.
dô bat in umb den münech her Dietrîch von Berne.
then bade him for the monk sir Dietrich of Bern.
des hulfen ime die recken alle biten dô vil gerne.
in-that helped him the warriors all bid then very gladly.

156 Dô sprach der abbet: 'herre, ez enist niht unser reht,
Then spoke the abbot: 'lord, it is not our right,
daz wir iht süln vehten. wir sîn gotes kneht.
that we at-all shall fight. we are God's servants.

wir süln tac unde naht ze dienste sîn bereit
we shall day and night to service be ready

dem gote, der uns geschaffen hât. der münech sî iu verseit.'
to-the God, who us created has. the monk be to-you refused.'

Dô sprach der münech Ilsân: '[her abbet,] habet ez ûf mînen eit, 157
Then spoke the monk Ilsan: '[sir abbot,] have it upon my oath,

ob disen werden recken in den rôsen geschiht kein leit,
if to-these worthy warriors in the roses happens any grief,

daz ich wol understüende, woltet ir mich rîten lân,
that I well could-prevent, would you me ride let,

die bruoder müezen's enkelten, ob ich'z gevüegen kan.'
the brothers must-it pay, if I-it manage can.'

Dô sprach der abbet schiere: 'vil lieber bruoder mîn, 158
Then spoke the abbot quickly: 'very dear brother mine,

welt ir mir dannen bringen ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
(if)-will you to-me thence bring a rose-wreath,

die wîle wellen wir büezen, sît ir gerne rîtet dar.'
the while will we do-penance, since you gladly ride there.'

des begunden lachen die herren alle gar.
at-that began laugh the lords all wholly.

Dô sprach der münech Ilsân: 'ich wil'z hân ûf mînen eit, 159
Then spoke the monk Ilsan: 'I will-it have upon my oath,

iu muoz sicherlîche ein krenzelîn sîn bereit,
for-you must surely a little-wreath be ready,

mich enwelle denn in dem garten mit strîte nieman bestân.
me unless-will then in the garden with battle no-one attack.

nu heizet iuwer müneche her vür mich alle gân.'
now bid your monks hither before me all go.'

160 Dô hiez man alle die bruoder ûz dem klôster gân.
Then bade one all the brothers out-of the cloister go.
sie kâmen in grôzen sorgen dô vür den küenen man.
they came in great cares then before the bold man.
dô sprach der münech Ilsân: 'ich muoz an den Rîn.
then spoke the monk Ilsan: 'I must to the Rhine.
habet mich in iuwerm gebete, vil lieben bruoder mîn.
have me in your prayer, very dear brothers mine.

161 Bitet got von himel, daz er mir gebe heil,
Pray God from heaven, that he me give salvation,
sô bringe ich iu von Rîne der rôsen ein michel teil.
so bring I you from Rhine of-the roses a great part.
iuwer sint zwêne und vünfzec, als ich geprüevet hân:
of-you are two and fifty, as I counted have:
alsô manegen recken wil ich dort bestân.
so many warriors will I there attack.

162 Sendet mich got her wider, ir lieben bruoder mîn,
(If)-sends me God hither back, you dear brothers mine,
ich bringe iuwer iegelîchem ein rôsenkrenzelîn.'
I bring of-you each a rose-wreath.'
dô sprâchen sie vil gelîche, diu ganze bruoderschaft,
then spoke they very alike, the whole brotherhood,
sie wunschten ime heiles alle ze sîner kraft.
they wished him salvation all to his strength.

‘Got wellen wir vür iuch biten tac unde naht, 163
‘God will we for you pray day and night,

daz er iu verlîhe kraft unde maht
that he to-you grant strength and might

und iuch her wider sende, vil lieber bruoder mîn.’
and you hither back send, very dear brother mine.’

aller êrste riten mit vröuden die recken an den Rîn.
of-all first rode with joys the warriors to the Rhine.

Dô sie solten biten umb des müneches heil, 164
When they should pray for the monk’s salvation,

dô santen sie im vlüeche nâch ein michel teil.
then sent they him curses after a great part.

sie bâten Crist von himel, daz wil ich iu sagen,
they prayed Christ from heaven, that will I you tell,

daz er niemer kæme wider, er würde tôt geslagen.
that he never came back, he unless-were dead struck.

The army rides to the Rhine taking nothing from the poor, and on the eleventh morning crosses at Worms. Gibich receives Dietrich, who rebukes him for indulging Kriemhild's pride. The Wolfings pitch rich tents before the city, and Kriemhild comes out crowned with three hundred ladies; Wolfhart threatens to slap her, but Hildebrand and Dietrich restrain him. Kriemhild greets Dietrich, he answers her challenge sharply, and she grants a week's truce, feasting the guests until the tenth morning.

165 Dô riten gein dem Rine die sehzec tûsent man.
Then rode toward the Rhine the sixty thousand men.

sie sâhen manegen bûren neben in ze acker gân.
they saw many-a peasant beside them to field go.

dirre herren site was guot und wol geriht:
these lords' custom was good and well ordered:

keime armen manne nâmen sie des sînen niht.
from-no poor man took they of-the his nothing.

166 Die vürsten und die herren dô hêten rehten muot:
The princes and the lords then had right spirit:

swâ sie hin reisten, dâ zerten sie ir eigen guot.
wherever they thither journeyed, there spent they their own goods.

dô wîste sie von lande meister Hiltebrant.
then guided them from land master Hildebrand.

diu rehte strâze gein Wormze diu was im wol bekant.
the right road toward Worms that was to-him well known.

167 An dem eilften morgen, alsô wir'z hân vernomen,
On the eleventh morning, as we-it have heard,

wâren die geste gein Wormze an den Rîn komen.
were the guests toward Worms to the Rhine come.

dô schiften sie mit einander ze Wormze über Rîn.
then shipped they with one-another at Worms over Rhine.

dô wart ir aller êrste gewar Kriemhilt diu künegîn.
then became of-them of-all first aware Kriemhild the queen.

Kriemhilt diu küneginne gienc dô al zehant 168
Kriemhild the queen went then all at-once

mit vrœlîchem muote, dâ si ir vater vant.
with joyful spirit, where she her father found.

* * *
(lacuna)

* * *
(lacuna)

Si sprach: 'vater, lieber herre, hâst du niht vernomen? 169
She spoke: 'father, dear lord, hast thou not heard?

der edel vürste von Berne ist in daz lant komen.
the noble prince of Bern is into the land come.

nu rît im engegene, daz stât dir wol an,
now ride him toward, that stands thee well on,

mit manegem werden recken, den maht du wol hân.'
with many-a worthy warrior, whom mayst thou well have.'

'Du hâst mir gerâten rehte, liebiu tohter mîn. 170
'Thou hast me counseled rightly, dear daughter mine.

vünf hundert ritter küene süln schiere bereit sîn
five hundred knights bold shall quickly ready be

in vil guot pfellergewant, daz mügen wir wol haben.
in very good silk-raiment, that may we well have.

wir süln deme von Berne an hôchvart niht vertragen.'
we shall him of Bern in pride not yield.'

171 Nu was der künec Gibeche an êren unverzeit.
Now was the king Gibich in honors undaunted.

vünf hundert ritter edel dô wurden schiere bereit
five hundred knights noble then were quickly ready

in pfeller und in hermelîn, vil rîchheit lac daran.
in silk and in ermine, much richness lay there-on.

wol enpfiengen sie den von Berne und alle sîne man.
well received they him of Bern and all his men.

172 Er enpfienc in ze den armen, von Berne hern Dietrîch.
He received him to the arms, of Bern sir Dietrich.

daz stuont dem künege Gibechen dô vil ritterlîch.
that stood to-the king Gibich then very knightly.

* * *
(lacuna)

* * *
(lacuna)

173 Dô sprach der voget von Berne: 'wir müezen iuwer gespötte sîn,
Then spoke the lord of Bern: 'we must your mockery be,

daz wir durch rôsen willen sîn komen an den Rîn
that we for roses' sake are come to the Rhine

und durch solhiu mære dâher vüeren mînen schilt.
and for such tidings hither carry my shield.

daz bringet zuo mit hôchvart iuwer tohter Kriemhilt.
that brings about with pride your daughter Kriemhild.

174 Daz si gein edeln recken ist sô gar betrogen!
That she toward noble warriors is so wholly deceived!

warumbe lât ir den willen ir? warzuo hât ir sie gezogen?
why let you the will her? to-what have you her reared?

welt ir ir alsus volgen, ir verlieset manegen man,
(if)-will you her thus follow, you lose many-a man,

ouch mac ez iu ze jüngest an iuwer leben gân.'
also may it to-you at last to your life go.'

'Si mac ez vollebringen, si hât recken vil, 175
'She may it accomplish, she has warriors many,

die alle gerne vehtent. strîten ist ir spil.
who all gladly fight. fighting is their game.

daz lât si durch nieman umb keiner hande drô.
that leaves she for no-one for no kind-of threat.

swenne sie süln vehten, sô sint sie harte vrô.'
whenever they shall fight, so are they very glad.'

Dô sprach der Bernære: 'ir hât vil helde guot, 176
Then spoke the Bernese: 'you have many heroes good,

des smæhet ir alle künege durch iuwern übermuot.
for-that scorn you all kings through your arrogance.

ich muoz ouch die mîne bringen, ob ich iht recken hân.
I must also the mine bring, if I any warriors have.

ir redet deme gelîche, alsô sie nieman türre bestân.'
you speak to-that like, as-if them no-one dare attack.'

Dô leiten sich die Wülfinge vür Wormze ûf daz velt. 177
Then laid themselves the Wolfings before Worms upon the field.

ûf sluoc man deme von Berne manec êrlîch gezelt.
up pitched one for-him of Bern many-a splendid tent.

die stolzen Nibelunge muosten in des jehen,
the proud Nibelungs must to-them of-that avow,

daz sie solhez rîchez gezelt nie mê hêten gesehen.
that they such rich tent never more had seen.

178 Kriemhilt diu küneginne ir hôchvart niht vergaz.
Kriemhild the queen her pride not forgot.

si sprach ze ir juncvrouwen: 'zieret iuch diu baz.
she spoke to her young-ladies: 'adorn you the better.

ich muoz ze deme von Berne ûf den grüenen plân,
I must to him of Bern upon the green field,

den wil ich enpfâhen und alle sîne man.'
him will I receive and all his men.'

179 Dô wart wol gezieret manegiu schœne meit
Then was well adorned many-a fair maiden

und manegiu schœne vrouwe, sô man uns von in seit,
and many-a fair lady, as one us of them tells,

mit golde und mit gesteine, daz gap sô liehten schîn.
with gold and with jewels, that gave so bright shine.

driu hundert vrouwen stuonden vor der künegîn.
three hundred ladies stood before the queen.

180 Diu hêre küneginne diu wart gezieret schône:
The lordly queen she was adorned finely:

man satzte ir ûf ir houbet eine rîche krône,
one set to-her upon her head a rich crown,

von golde und von gesteine gap si liehten schîn.
of gold and of jewels gave it bright shine.

dô sprach Wolfhart der küene: 'ich sihe her gân die künegîn.
then spoke Wolfhart the bold: 'I see hither go the queen.

181 Durch ir grôze hôchvart enwird ich ir niemer holt.
For her great pride become I to-her never favorable.

si wænet, wir nie gesæhen gesteine oder golt.
she thinks, we never saw jewels or gold.

kum ich ir alsô nâhe, ich gibe ir einen [backen]slac,
(if)-come I to-her so near, I give her a [cheek]-blow,

daz si unz an ir ende mîn wol gedenken mac.'
that she until to her end of-me well think may.'

Dô sprach Hiltebrant der wîse: 'nein dû, lâz dînen zorn. 182
Then spoke Hildebrand the wise: 'no thou, leave thy anger.

slüegest du die künegîn, dîn êre wære verlorn.
should-strike thou the queen, thy honor were lost.

rich ez an ir recken, hât si dir iht getân,
avenge it on her warriors, (if)-has she to-thee anything done,

sô wirt man dich loben vür einen biderman.'
so will one thee praise for a worthy-man.'

Dô sprach der voget von Berne: 'ir hôchgelobeten degen, 183
Then spoke the lord of Bern: 'you high-praised thanes,

ir sült iuwer zühte vor den vrouwen pflegen,
you shall your courtesy before the ladies keep,

sô wirt iu wol gesprochen von der künegîn,
so will-be of-you well spoken by the queen,

daz si niht welle wænen, daz wir gar tôren sîn.'
that she not will think, that we wholly fools are.'

Daz gelobeten ime die recken. sie wâren unverzeit. 184
That vowed to-him the warriors. they were undaunted.

dô kam diu küneginne und manegiu schœne meit.
then came the queen and many-a fair maiden.

'sît willekomen, [herre] von Berne ein vürste lobesam
'be welcome, [lord] of Bern a prince praiseworthy

und alle dise herren, der ich niht genennen kan.
and all these lords, whom I not name can.

185 Ich hœre sît dîner kintheit vil singen unde sagen,
I hear since thy childhood much sing and tell,
du habest bî dînen zîten der recken vil erslagen.
thou have in thy times of-the warriors many slain.
des vröuwet sich mîn gemüete,' sprach diu künegîn,
of-that rejoices itself my mind,' spoke the queen,
'daz ir under den vürsten müget der tiurste sîn.'
'that you among the princes may the dearest be.'

186 'Ich bin niht der tiurste, vil edeliu künegîn,
'I am not the dearest, very noble queen,
sô wil ich under den recken ouch niht der bœste sîn.
so will I among the warriors also not the worst be.
swer des niht geloubet, daz ist mir vil leit.
whoever that not believes, that is to-me very grievous.
iuwer hôchvart wirt enkelten manec ritter gemeit.'
your pride will pay many-a knight gay.'

187 Sô sprach der von Berne, der küene wîgant:
So spoke he of Bern, the bold fighter:
'ich bin durch âventiure komen in diz lant.
'I am for adventure come into this land.
ir seht gerne morden die recken unverzeit.
you see gladly murder the warriors undaunted.
ich hân iuwer kûme erbiten, vil keiserlîchiu meit.
I have you hardly awaited, very imperial maiden.

188 Ir enputet iuwern widertrutz mir und mînen man,
You announced your counter-defiance to-me and my men,
und hêten bî unsern zîten iu nie kein leit getân.
and had in our times to-you never any grief done.

ê denne ich daz vertrüege, daz wil ich iu sagen,
before than I that endured, that will I you tell,

ich und mîne recken wolten ê werden tôt geslagen.'
I and my warriors would rather be dead struck.'

Si sprach: 'nu habet guoten muot, ir unverzeiter degen, 189
She spoke: 'now have good spirit, you undaunted thane,

ich wil iu dise wochen einen vride geben,
I will to-you this week a truce give,

daz ir gar wol geruowet und iuwer dienestman.
that you wholly well rest and your service-men.

swelch iuwer dan türre vehten, der wirt mit strîte wol bestân.'
whichever of-you then dare fight, he will-be with battle well attacked.'

Ein vride wart gegeben unz an den ahten tac. 190
A truce was given until to the eighth day.

wie rehte êrlîche man dô der geste pflac
how rightly honorably one then of-the guests took-care

mit ezzen und mit trinken! des gap man in genuoc.
with eating and with drinking! of-that gave one them enough.

den klâren wîn diu künegîn selbe vür die geste truoc.
the clear wine the queen herself before the guests carried.

Dô lâgen sie mit vröuden unz an den niunden tac, 191
Then lay they with joys until to the ninth day,

die wîle manec ritter dâ kurzewîle pflac.
the while many-a knight there pastime held.

an dem zehenden morgen der vride wart ûf gegeben.
on the tenth morning the truce was up given.

des muoste dô enkelten manec küener degen.
of-that must then pay many-a bold thane.

Kriemhild boasts that no man in Dietrich's host is a match for her champions, and Hildebrand sends her back to her people. Gibich promises to avenge her and calls on the giant Pusold. Wolfhart springs into the garden and is struck down among the roses, but rises, wounds the giant till his blood runs in a brook, and cuts off his head. Kriemhild gives him a wreath, an embrace, and a kiss, and Dietrich's men welcome him back.

192 Kriemhilt diu küneginne dô niht langer enbeit,
Kriemhild the queen then not longer waited,
mit ernste und mit vlîze si sich dô bereit.
with earnest and with diligence she herself then prepared.
si sprach: 'seht ir die zwelf recken in dem garten stân?
she spoke: 'see you the twelve warriors in the garden stand?
die hüetent mir der rôsen, ir tugenthafter man.
who guard for-me the roses, you virtuous men.

193 Der mit eime strîtet', sprach diu künegîn,
Who with one fights', spoke the queen,
'ein helsen und ein küssen muoz ime bereit sîn.
'an embrace and a kiss must for-him ready be.
ich sihe aber under iu allen keinen solhen man,
I see but among you all no such man,
vor deme ich mîner recken dörfte sorge hân.'
before whom I for-my warriors would-need care have.'

194 Dô sprach gar zornlîche der alte Hiltebrant:
Then spoke wholly wrathfully the old Hildebrand:
'kêret wider ze iuwerm gesinde, ir werdet anders geschant.
'turn back to your household, you will-be otherwise shamed.

iuch und al iuwer recken lobet ir ze vil.
you and all your warriors praise you too much.

ich spriche ez ûf mîne triuwe, sich hebet ein hertez spil.'
I say it upon my faith, itself raises a hard game.'

Man nam die küneginne und vuorte sie von dan. 195
One took the queen and led her from thence.

si sprach: 'ez wirt gerochen, ob ich'z gevüegen kan.'
she spoke: 'it will-be avenged, if I-it manage can.'

si gienc ze ir vater und kleite ez ime zehant:
she went to her father and lamented it to-him at-once:

'mir hât übel gesprochen der alte Hiltebrant.'
'me has ill spoken-to the old Hildebrand.'

Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'dâ tuot er übel an 196
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'there does he ill on

und ist wærlîche gar unrehte getân.
and is truly wholly wrongly done.

ich wil dich selbe rechen, liebiu tohter mîn.
I will thee myself avenge, dear daughter mine.

sie mügen ie gote klagen, daz sie ie kâmen an den Rîn.'
they may ever to-God lament, that they ever came to the Rhine.'

Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'wâ ist nu Pûsolt, 197
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'where is now Pusold,

dem ich bî mînen zîten ie bin gewesen holt?
to-whom I in my times ever am been favorable?

daz man mîne tohter betrüebet hât, daz sol im wesen leit.'
that one my daughter grieved has, that shall to-him be grievous.'

dô sprach der rise Pûsolt: 'herre, ich bin bereit.'
then spoke the giant Pusold: 'lord, I am ready.'

198 Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant: ‘sihst du daz, Wolfhart?
Then spoke master Hildebrand: ‘seest thou that, Wolfhart?

nu hebe dich, lieber neve mîn, ze ime hin ûf die vart.’
now raise thyself, dear nephew mine, to him thither upon the way.’

dô sprach der starke recke, der wüetende Wolfhart:
then spoke the strong warrior, the raging Wolfhart:

‘wir hân dise reise al ze lange gespart.’
‘we have this journey all too long spared.’

199 Dô spranc in den garten Wolfhart der küene man.
Then sprang into the garden Wolfhart the bold man.

dô lief in der rise gar griulîchen an.
then ran him the giant wholly horribly at.

in des risen lîbe ime daz herze wiel.
in the giant’s body to-him the heart boiled.

dô sluoc er Wolfharten, daz er in die rôsen viel.
then struck he Wolfhart, that he into the roses fell.

200 Hiltebrant der alte rief Wolfharten an:
Hildebrand the old called Wolfhart on:

‘wie bist du gevallen ûf disen wîten plân!
‘how art thou fallen upon this wide field!

solt du von eime risen werden nu erslagen,
shalt thou by a giant be now slain,

ritter unde vrouwen mügen dich wol klagen.’
knights and ladies may thee well lament.’

Wolfhart der küene wider ûf spranc: 201
Wolfhart the bold back up sprang:

'noch lebe ich ∗∗∗ sunder mîner vînde danc.'
'still live I (lacuna) without my foes' thanks.'

∗∗∗
(lacuna)

∗∗∗
(lacuna)

Dô lief er den risen gar griulîchen an. 202
Then ran he the giant wholly horribly at.

dô muoste vor im vliehen der ungevüege man.
then must before him flee the monstrous man.

er sluoc im tiefe wunden vil michel unde grôz,
he struck him deep wounds very great and large,

daz ein bach bluotes ûz sîme grôzen lîbe schôz.
that a brook of-blood out-of his great body shot.

Ûf racte ime die vinger der rise Pûsolt. 203
Up stretched to-him the fingers the giant Pusold.

er sprach: 'nu enwürde du nie keime kristen holt,
he spoke: 'now became thou never to-any Christian favorable,

des muost du enkelten, daz wil ich dir sagen.'
of-that must thou pay, that will I thee tell.'

dô wart dem grôzen risen sîn houbet abe geslagen.
then was to-the great giant his head off struck.

Dô kam diu küneginne und gap ime ein krenzelîn, 204
Then came the queen and gave him a little-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen muost ime bereit sîn.
an embrace and a kiss must for-him ready be.

dô gienc ûz dem garten Wolfhart der küene man.
then went out-of the garden Wolfhart the bold man.

wol enpfienc in der von Berne und alle sîne man.
well received him he of Bern and all his men.

VI · SIGESTAP AND ORTWIN

The giant Ortwin, Pusold's brother, comes to avenge him, cursing the meadow that ever bore roses. Hildebrand sends his kinsman Sigestap, who goes gladly. The giant fights so mightily that the young knight long saves himself only by parrying, until at last he fells Ortwin and slays him. Kriemhild sets a rose-wreath on him and gives him an embrace and a kiss, and he returns joyfully to the Wolfings.

205 Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'wâ bist du, Ortwîn?
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'where art thou, Ortwin?

du solt balde rechen den lieben bruoder dîn,
thou shalt quickly avenge the dear brother thine,

der hie vor uns allen lît ze tôde erslagen.
who here before us all lies to death slain.

ich kan in unz an mîn ende niemer volle geklagen.'
I can him until to my end never fully lament.'

206 Ê er daz wort ie vollen sprach, dô kam Ortwîn:
Before he the word ever fully spoke, then came Ortwin:

'owê dînes tôdes, vil lieber bruoder mîn!
'alas of-thy death, very dear brother mine!

der anger sî vervluochet, der die rôsen ie getruoc.
the meadow be cursed, that the roses ever bore.

dâvon muoz verderben von mir manec ritter guot.
there-from must perish by me many-a knight good.

Mir ist geschehen leide, ouch ist mir vil zorn.' 207
To-me is happened grief, also is to-me very anger.'

daz hôrte meister Hiltebrant, der degen hôchgeborn.
that heard master Hildebrand, the thane high-born.

er sprach ze sîme ôheim: 'hœrst du daz, Sigestap,
he spoke to his kinsman: 'hearest thou that, Sigestap,

wie der rise limmet? nu hilf im in sîn grap.'
how the giant roars? now help him into his grave.'

Dô sprach der junge Sigestap: 'des hân ich mich erwegen, 208
Then spoke the young Sigestap: 'of-that have I myself resolved,

sît ich bin komen über Rîn, sô wil ich strîtes pflegen.
since I am come over Rhine, so will I of-battle take-care.

wær er noch sô ungevüege, doch wil ich in bestân.'
were he yet so monstrous, yet will I him attack.'

des dankete ime der Berner, der vürste wolgetân.
for-that thanked him the Bernese, the prince well-made.

Dô spranc in die rôsen Sigestap der küene man. 209
Then sprang into the roses Sigestap the bold man.

dô lief in der rise gar vreislîchen an.
then ran him the giant wholly dreadfully at.

ich sage iu vürwâr, von zorne daz geschach:
I tell you truly, from anger that happened:

sie sluogen vaste zesamene, ir keiner dô niht ensprach.
they struck fast together, of-them none then nothing spoke.

Dô streit sô krefteclîche der rise Ortwîn. 210
Then fought so mightily the giant Ortwin.

dô mohte in wol riuwen der liebe bruoder sîn.
then might him well grieve the dear brother his.

dô wart sô vreislîche ûf den ritter junc geslagen.
then was so dreadfully upon the knight young struck.

Sigestap der küene wolt ime des niht vertragen.
Sigestap the bold would to-him that not endure.

211 Mit schirmen sich lange nerte Sigestap der küene man.
With parrying himself long saved Sigestap the bold man.

êrste muoste von ime entwîchen der rise vreissam.
at-first must from him give-way the giant dreadful.

er valte in ze der erden, daz wil ich iu sagen.
he felled him to the earth, that will I you tell.

dô wart Ortwîn der rise von dem recken tôt geslagen.
then was Ortwin the giant by the warrior dead struck.

212 Dô sûmte sich ze lange Kriemhilt diu künegîn.
Then delayed herself too long Kriemhild the queen.

dô satzte si dem ritter ûf ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
then set she to-the knight on a rose-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen gap si dem jungen man.
an embrace and a kiss gave she to-the young man.

dô kêrte er vrœlîche ze den Wülfingen dan.
then turned he joyfully to the Wolfings thence.

Gibich laments his two slain champions and calls on the giant Schrutan, their uncle, who roars for an opponent. Heime at first refuses so monstrous a foe, then goes in, praying God to protect him. Schrutan mocks him and strikes him down, but Heime rises, wounds him deep with his sword Nagelring, and stabs him to the earth, so that three of the giants now lie dead. Kriemhild gives Heime his wreath and his kiss.

213

Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: ‘sô wê mir dirre nôt!
Then spoke the king Gibich: ‘so woe me of-this need!
wie ligent mîne recken in dem garten tôt!
how lie my warriors in the garden dead!
zwêne küene degene die sint mir erslagen.
two bold thanes they are from-me slain.
vil starker rise Schrûtân, daz wil ich dir klagen.’
very strong giant Schrutan, that will I to-thee lament.’

214

Dô sprach vil grûslîche der rise Schrûtân:
Then spoke very gruesomely the giant Schrutan:
‘wâ ist er nu sô lange, der mich sol bestân?
‘where is he now so long, who me shall attack?
mich riuwent alsô sêre diu mînes bruoder kint,
me grieve so sorely the my brother’s children,
diu mir in dem garten ze tôde geslagen sint.’
who to-me in the garden to death struck are.’

215

Dô sprach der alte Hiltebrant: ‘Heime, hœrst du daz?
Then spoke the old Hildebrand: ‘Heime, hearest thou that?
mit deme solt du vehten, Schrûtân ist dir gehaz.
with him shalt thou fight, Schrutan is to-thee hostile.

er klaget alsô sêre diu sînes bruoder kint.
he laments so sorely the his brother's children.

sîn kraft und sîn sterke diu ist gein dir ein wint.'
his power and his strength that is against thee a wind.'

216 Dô sprach der helt Heime: 'ich enwil sîn niht bestân.
Then spoke the hero Heime: 'I will him not attack.

er ist ze ungevüege und ouch ze vreissam,
he is too monstrous and also too dreadful,

und slüege er mich ze tôde, ez wære der werlte spot.'
if should-slay he me to death, it were the world's mockery.'

dô sprach meister Hiltebrant: 'dâvor behüete dich got.'
then spoke master Hildebrand: 'from-that protect thee God.'

217 'Ich rede ez niht darumbe, ich wil in doch bestân.
'I speak it not there-for, I will him yet attack.

got welle mich behüeten vor dem ungevüegen man!'
God will me protect from the monstrous man!'

dô spranc in den garten der degen lobesam.
then sprang into the garden the thane praiseworthy.

des dankete ime der Berner und alle sîne man.
for-that thanked him the Bernese and all his men.

218 Dô sach man den ungehiuren durch die rôsen gân.
Then saw one the monstrous-one through the roses go.

dô rief ûz grôzem zorne der rise Schrûtân:
then called out-of great anger the giant Schrutan:

'wes wilt du dich trœsten, du wunderkleiner man?
'of-what wilt thou thyself trust, thou wonder-small man?

ich trûwe dîner tûsent wol eine hie bestân.'
I trust of-thy thousand well alone here attack.'

Dô sprach der ritter Heime: ‘daz sint die rede dîn. 219
Then spoke the knight Heime: ‘those are the speeches thine.
mir welle got niht helfen, ez muoz dîn ende sîn.’
me will God not help, it must thy end be.’
des erzurnte der ungehiure, er gap im einen slac,
at-that grew-angry the monstrous-one, he gave him a blow,
daz der helt Heime gestrecket vor im lac.
that the hero Heime stretched before him lay.

Ûf spranc der helt Heime und lief den risen an. 220
Up sprang the hero Heime and ran the giant at.
dô sluoc er tiefe wunden dem ungevüegen man.
then struck he deep wounds to-the monstrous man.
der klê wart ouch geroetet ûf der heiden grüene.
the clover was also reddened upon the heath green.
sie striten vrümeclîche, die stolzen helde küene.
they fought valiantly, the proud heroes bold.

Heime der ritter edel dô Nagelringen sluoc 221
Heime the knight noble then Nagelring struck
ûf den risen Schrûtân, daz er’s schiere hête genuoc.
upon the giant Schrutan, that he-of-it quickly had enough.
zwischen sînen brüsten schriet er im wunden wît.
between his breasts cut he him wounds wide.
sus vaht er mit dem grôzen eine lange zît.
thus fought he with the great-one a long time.

Er lief in ane mit grimme und gap im einen slac, 222
He ran him at with fury and gave him a blow,
daz der rise langer vor ime gestrecket lac.
that the giant longer before him stretched lay.

er stach in ze der erden, daz wil ich iu sagen.
he stabbed him to the earth, that will I you tell.

dô wâren der risen drîe ze tôde nu erslagen.
then were of-the giants three to death now slain.

223 Dô kam diu küneginne und gap ime sîn krenzelîn,
Then came the queen and gave him his little-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen muost ouch sîn eigen sîn.
an embrace and a kiss must also his own be.

dô gienc ûz dem garten der ritter wolgetân.
then went out-of the garden the knight well-made.

dô enpfienc in der Bernære und sîne dienestman.
then received him the Bernese and his service-men.

VIII · WITEGE AND ASPRIAN

The giant Asprian, with two sharp swords, comes to avenge the others. Hildebrand bids Witege fight him, but Witege refuses the devil's man until Dietrich, through Hildebrand, offers his horse Schemming in exchange for Witege's Falke. Witege then springs into the garden; his shield is shattered and he is wounded by the two swords, but with his sword Miming he cuts deep through the giant's mail until Asprian tries to flee. Kriemhild crowns him, and Schemming becomes his.

224 Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'sô wê mir dirre nôt!
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'so woe me of-this need!

wie ligent mîne diener sô jæmerlîche tôt!
how lie my servants so piteously dead!

der anger sî vervluochet, der die rôsen hât getragen!
the meadow be cursed, that the roses has borne!

darumbe sint mîne recken ze tôde mir geslagen.
there-for are my warriors to death from-me slain.

Sie wâren in ganzen triuwen ze dienste mir bereit. 225
They were in whole faith to service to-me ready.

Aspriân, starker rise, daz lâz dir wesen leit.'
Asprian, strong giant, that let to-thee be grievous.'

er sprach: 'vil lieber herre, ir sült an mir niht verzagen.
he spoke: 'very dear lord, you shall in me not despair.

ich wil die risen rechen, die uns sint erslagen.'
I will the giants avenge, who to-us are slain.'

Sô sprach ûz grôzem zorne der rise Aspriân: 226
So spoke out-of great anger the giant Asprian:

'ich bringe sie in grôze nôt, ob ich'z gevüegen kan.'
'I bring them into great need, if I-it manage can.'

er wâpente sich mit grimme, in die rôsen er sich huop,
he armed himself with fury, into the roses he himself raised,

mit zwein scharfen swerten er durch den anger wuot.
with two sharp swords he through the meadow waded.

Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant ze Witegen dem degen: 227
Then spoke master Hildebrand to Witege the thane:

'Witege, nu wis gemant mit ime strîtes ze pflegen.
'Witege, now be reminded with him of-battle to take-care.

dîme guoten swerte mac nieman widerstân:
to-thy good sword may no-one withstand:

du erslehst in wol ân schaden, den risen Aspriân.'
thou slayest him well without harm, the giant Asprian.'

Dô sprach der helt Witege: 'daz râtet ir mir sît 228
Then spoke the hero Witege: 'that counsel you me since

daz ich bin hie ellende, des enkilte ich manege zît,
that I am here in-exile, of-that pay I many-a time,

daz ir mich heizet strîten mit des tiuvels man,
that you me bid fight with the devil's man,

und wæret ir mîne vriunde, ir soltet ez hân gelân.
and were you my friends, you should it have left.

229 Er slüege ân sînen schaden ein her ze tôde wol.
He would-slay without his harm an army to death well.

mîn herze und mîne sinne mich dâvor behüeten sol,
my heart and my senses me from-that protect shall,

daz ich iht mit im vehte,' sprach der stolze man,
that I at-all with him fight,' spoke the proud man,

'swelher ez anders wære, ich wolte in gerne hie bestân.'
'whichever it otherwise were, I would him gladly here attack.'

230 Dô sprach der Bernære: 'du solt mich gniezen lân,
Then spoke the Bernese: 'thou shalt me profit let,

daz ich mit dir wil teilen allez, daz ich hân.
that I with thee will share all, that I have.

disiu grôze reise diu wære gar ein wiht,
this great journey that were wholly a nothing,

bestüendest du des dînen in dem garten niht.'
should-attack thou of-the thine in the garden not.'

231 'Wie hazzet ir mich sô sêre, als ich iuwer vînt sî?
'How hate you me so sorely, as-if I your foe be?

doch ist der ungehiure vor mir strîtes vrî',
yet is the monstrous-one from me of-battle free',

alsô sprach der helt Witege, 'die rede sült ir lân.
so spoke the hero Witege, 'the speech shall you leave.

strîte mit im, swer dâ welle, ich wil sîn niht bestân.'
fight with him, whoever there will, I will him not attack.'

Hiltebrant der alte nam sînen herren [hin] dan. 232
Hildebrand the old took his lord [away] thence.

‘wie râtet ir nu, herre? als ich gedâht hân,
‘how counsel you now, lord? as I thought have,

woltet ir im iuwern Schemminc umb sînen Valken geben,
would you him your Schemming for his Falke give,

sô begünde er wâgen sînen lîp und ouch sîn leben.’
so would-begin he stake his body and also his life.’

Dô sprach der Bernære: ‘lieber gæbe ich ime ein lant. 233
Then spoke the Bernese: ‘rather would-give I him a land.

wil er es niht gerâten, ich gibe ez ime ze hant.’
(if)-will he it not spare, I give it him at once.’

Hiltebrant sprach: ‘herre, daz sol stæte von iu sîn.’
Hildebrand spoke: ‘lord, that shall steadfast from you be.’

‘nu werdet ir es bürge, ich gibe ez im ûf die triuwe mîn.’
‘now become you of-it surety, I give it him upon the faith mine.’

‘Wes hâst du dich [noch] berâten?’ sprach meister Hiltebrant, 234
‘Of-what hast thou thyself [still] decided?’ spoke master Hildebrand,

‘daz lâz mich wizzen balde, küener wîgant.
‘that let me know quickly, bold fighter.

ein rîchez herzoctuom wil dir mîn herre geben:
a rich duchy will thee my lord give:

dir wirt Ôsterdingen, darumbe wâge du dîn leben.’
to-thee becomes Osterdingen, there-for stake thou thy life.’

Dô sprach der helt Witege: ‘und gæb er mir al sîn lant, 235
Then spoke the hero Witege: ‘and should-give he me all his land,

doch bestüende ich sîn niht’, sprach der wîgant.
yet would-attack I him not’, spoke the fighter.

‘er sol vor mîme lîbe gar âne sorge sîn:
‘he shall before my body wholly without care be:

ich bestân sîn niht ûf die triuwe mîn.’
I attack him not upon the faith mine.’

236 ‘Neinâ, helt Witege, bestant du den degen,
‘No, hero Witege, (if)-attackest thou the thane,

sô wil dir mîn herre sînen Schemminc geben
so will thee my lord his Schemming give

umb dînen guoten Valken, gesigest du ime an,
for thy good Falke, (if)-winnest thou from-him on,

daz guote ros Schemminc wirt dir undertân.’
the good horse Schemming becomes to-thee subject.’

237 Dô sprach der alte Hiltebrant: ‘ich wil dîn bürge sîn,
Then spoke the old Hildebrand: ‘I will thy surety be,

daz dir ez gît vür eigen der liebe herre mîn.’
that thee it gives for own the dear lord mine.’

dô sprach der helt Witege: ‘sô wil ich in bestân.
then spoke the hero Witege: ‘so will I him attack.

und sî denne ouch widerseit dem ungevüegen man.’
and be then also defied to-the monstrous man.’

238 Dô spranc in den garten Witege zehant.
Then sprang into the garden Witege at-once.

des dankete ime her Dietrîch und her Hiltebrant.
for-that thanked him sir Dietrich and sir Hildebrand.

Aspriân der küene was ganzer manheit vol:
Asprian the bold was of-whole manhood full:

mit zwein scharfen swerten kunde er vehten wol.
with two sharp swords could he fight well.

Swenne er solte strîten, daz was ime ein wint. 239
Whenever he should fight, that was to-him a wind.

an lief er mit grimme dô Wielandes kint.
on ran he with fury then Wieland's child.

doch was der helt Witege in strîten unverzeit:
yet was the hero Witege in battles undaunted:

ûz zucte er Mîmingen, der herte helme sneit.
out drew he Miming, which hard helmets cut.

Dô sprungen sie zesamene, die zwêne küenen man. 240
Then sprang they together, the two bold men.

vil krefteclîcher slege wurden von in getân.
very mighty blows were by them done.

von den zwein swerten kam Witege in nôt:
from the two swords came Witege into need:

sîne liehten stahelringe wurden von bluote rôt.
his bright steel-rings became with blood red.

Sîn goltvarwer schilt wart im geslagen von der hant, 241
His gold-colored shield was to-him struck from the hand,

daz er ze kleinen stücken muoste stieben ûf daz lant.
that it to small pieces must scatter upon the land.

daz guote swert Witege in beide hende nam,
the good sword Witege into both hands took,

dô lief er zornlîche den starken risen an.
then ran he wrathfully the strong giant at.

Er sluoc im tiefe wunden durch sîne brünne guot, 242
He struck him deep wounds through his mail-shirt good,

daz darnâch muoste vliezen sîn rôsenvarwez bluot.
that there-after must flow his rose-colored blood.

von des risen bluote sô wart der anger naz.
from the giant's blood so became the meadow wet.

Aspriân wolt ime entrinnen, swie küene er gewesen was.
Asprian would from-him escape, however bold he been was.

243 Dô beit ouch niht langer Kriemhilt diu künegîn:
Then waited also not longer Kriemhild the queen:

ûf satzte si dô Witegen ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
up set she then to-Witege a rose-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen gap si dem küenen man.
an embrace and a kiss gave she to-the bold man.

dô gienc der helt Witege ze den Wülfingen dan.
then went the hero Witege to the Wolfings thence.

244 Daz guote ros Schemminc dô wart im undertân.
The good horse Schemming then became to-him subject.

den Valken ouch her Dietrîch ze ime dô genam.
the Falke also sir Dietrich to himself then took.

in stürmen und in strîten was ez niht ein wiht,
in assaults and in battles was it not a nothing,

ez enliez sînen herren in keinen nœten niht.
it left its lord in any distresses not.

Studenfuchs of the Rhine strides through the roses, and Ilsan the monk goes against him with a cowl over his armor; the ladies laugh, and the queen tells him he would do better singing mass in the choir. When Studenfuchs mocks him as the fool Dietrich has sent, Ilsan knocks him into the roses with his fist, and after a long and bloody fight wins the prize. Taking his wreath and kiss, he demands more for his fifty-two brothers, and Kriemhild promises one for each man he throws down.

Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'unser strîten ist ein wiht. 245
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'our fighting is a nothing.
wir hân in dem garten keiner sælde niht.
we have in the garden of-no fortune anything.
Stûdenvuhs von dem Rîne sol sich es nemen an,
Studenfuchs from the Rhine shall himself of-it take on,
er mac uns wol gerechen, er ist ein starker man.'
he may us well avenge, he is a strong man.'

Dô sprach grimmeclîche Stûdenvuhs von dem Rîn: 246
Then spoke grimly Studenfuchs from the Rhine:
'nu solte ich vil billîche der êrste gewesen sîn,
'now should I very fittingly the first been be,
ez hête uns wol gevrumet, daz wil ich iu sagen,
it would-have to-us well profited, that will I you tell,
sô wæren uns in dem garten die risen niht erslagen.'
so would-be to-us in the garden the giants not slain.'

Stûdenvuhs von dem Rîne sich in den garten huop, 247
Studenfuchs from the Rhine himself into the garden raised,
wie gar vermezzenlîche er durch die rôsen wuot!
how wholly daringly he through the roses waded!

dô hête er grôze sorge, in getörste nieman bestân.
then had he great care, him dared no-one attack.

man sach in zornlîche durch die rôsen gân.
one saw him wrathfully through the roses go.

248 Dô sprach der alte Hiltebrant: 'vil lieber bruoder Ilsân,
Then spoke the old Hildebrand: 'very dear brother Ilsan,

sihst du einen vürsten dort durch die rôsen gân?
seest thou a prince there through the roses go?

der ist geheizen Stûdenvuhs dâher von dem Rîn.
he is called Studenfuchs hither from the Rhine.

mit deme solt du vehten, lieber bruoder mîn.
with him shalt thou fight, dear brother mine.

249 'Ich bestân in willeclîche', sô sprach her Ilsân,
'I attack him willingly', so spoke sir Ilsan,

'des strîtes in dem garten ich kûme erbiten hân.'
'the battle in the garden I hardly awaited have.'

er zôch eine kutten über sîn stehelîn gewant,
he drew a cowl over his steel raiment,

den schilt nam er zem arme, den helm er ûf gebant.
the shield took he to-the arm, the helmet he on bound.

250 Der münech vil kürlîche durch die rôsen wuot,
The monk very gallantly through the roses waded,

des begunde lachen vil manegiu vrouwe guot.
at-that began laugh very many-a lady good.

dô sprach diu küneginne: 'ir möhtet [lieber] ze kôre gân
then spoke the queen: 'you might [rather] to choir go

und hülfet messe singen, daz stüende iu vil baz an.'
and would-help mass sing, that would-stand you very better on.'

Dô sprach der münech Ilsân: ‘vil keiserlîchiu meit, 251
Then spoke the monk Ilsan: ‘very imperial maiden,

mir ist von iuwerm garten sô rehte vil geseit.
to-me is of your garden so rightly much told.

durch iuwer rôsen willen sint die recken tôt geslagen.
for your roses’ sake are the warriors dead struck.

mir muoz der rôsen werden, swaz ich ir mac getragen.’
to-me must of-the roses become, whatever I of-them may carry.’

Dô sprach vil zornlîche Stûdenvuhs von dem Rîn: 252
Then spoke very wrathfully Studenfuchs from the Rhine:

‘wær ich nu guotes muotes, ich müeste lachen dîn.
‘were I now of-good mind, I would-have-to laugh at-thee.

warzuo hât uns der Berner sînen tôren her gesant?
to-what has us the Bernese his fool hither sent?

er solte ez billîch hân gelân, hêt er mich rehte erkant.’
he should it fittingly have left, had he me rightly known.’

Dô sprach der münech Ilsân (er hête recken sin): 253
Then spoke the monk Ilsan (he had warriors’ sense):

‘ich muoz dich innen bringen, ob ich ein tôre bin.’
‘I must thee aware bring, whether I a fool am.’

dô huop er ûf die vûst und gap im einen slac,
then raised he up the fist and gave him a blow,

daz der helt Stûdenvuhs vor im in den rôsen lac.
that the hero Studenfuchs before him in the roses lay.

‘Owê mir des lasters’, sprach Stûdenvuhs von dem Rîn. 254
‘Alas me of-the shame’, spoke Studenfuchs from the Rhine.

ûf spranc er zornlîche und nam daz swert sîn.
up sprang he wrathfully and took the sword his.

'[mir ist bî mînen zîten daz laster nie mê geschehen.
'[to-me is in my times the shame never more happened.

in stürmen und in strîten muoste man mir des besten jehen.]
in assaults and in fights must one to-me the best avow.]

255 Owê mîner êren, wie hân ich die verlorn!'
Alas my honor, how have I it lost!'

dô sprungen sie zesamene, die recken hôchgeborn.
then sprang they together, the warriors high-born.

[êrste kâmen sie zesamene, die mortgrimmen man.
[first came they together, the murder-grim men.

dô trâten sie die rôsen gar tiefe in den plân.]
then trod they the roses wholly deep into the field.]

256 Der anger wart benetzet, er wart von bluote rôt.
The meadow was wetted, it became with blood red.

sie brâhten beide einander in vil grôze nôt.
they brought both one-another into very great need.

durch die helme dicke sluogen die zwêne küenen man.
through the helmets often struck the two bold men.

sie blicten beide einander gar vîntlîchen an.
they looked both one-another wholly hostilely at.

257 Stûdenvuhse von dem Rîne dô wart ein slac getân,
To-Studenfuchs from the Rhine then was a blow done,

daz ime daz bluot vil sêre über sîniu ougen ran,
that to-him the blood very sorely over his eyes ran,

durch helm und durch die ringe vil nâhe bî daz leben.
through helmet and through the rings very near by the life.

dô wart dem müneche Ilsân der prîs vil schiere gegeben.
then was to-the monk Ilsan the prize very quickly given.

Dô sûmte sich niht langer Kriemhilt diu künegîn, 258
Then delayed herself not longer Kriemhild the queen,

ûf satzte si dem müneche ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
up set she to-the monk a rose-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen gap si dem küenen man.
an embrace and a kiss gave she to-the bold man.

er sprach: 'edeliu künegîn, ich muoz der rôsen mêre hân.
he spoke: 'noble queen, I must of-the roses more have.

Ich hân zwêne und vünfzec bruoder, edeliu künegîn, 259
I have two and fifty brothers, noble queen,

der gelobete ich iegelîchem ein rôsenkrenzelîn.
of-whom vowed I each a rose-wreath.

hât ir niht alsô manegen, der mich getürre bestân,
(if)-have you not as many, who me dare attack,

sô wil ich die rôsen rouben, des müezet ir iemer schande hân.'
so will I the roses rob, of-that must you ever shame have.'

Dô sprach diu küneginne: 'ich hân noch recken guot, 260
Then spoke the queen: 'I have still warriors good,

daz mîn rôsengarte vor rouben ist behuot.
that my rose-garden from robbing is guarded.

swenne die zwelve gestrîtent, du tugenthafter man,
when the twelve have-fought, thou virtuous man,

wilt du mê vehten, sô wirst du bestân.
(if)-wilt thou more fight, so wilt-be thou attacked.

Alsô manegen du abe wirfest', sprach diu künegîn, 261
As many thou down throwest', spoke the queen,

'alsô dicke wil ich dir geben ein rôsenkrenzelîn.
'as often will I thee give a rose-wreath.

ich gibe dir mîne triuwe, du wirst es niht erlân.'
I give thee my faith, thou wilt-be of-it not spared.'

'dâ benüeget mir wol an, wan ich sie gerne bestân.'
'there pleases me well on, for I them gladly attack.'

X · DIETLEIB AND WALTHER

Gibich calls on Walther of Wasgenstein, who warned that Dietrich had many good men but will fight his match. Young Dietleib, who says he came to the Rhine for Walther's sake, goes against him; Walther mocks him as Biterolf's boy, not yet grown. They fight until shields and helmets are hewn apart and neither can win, and at Hildebrand's counsel Kriemhild grants both the victory, a wreath for each; they become sworn comrades.

262 Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'waz sol nu mîn leben?
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'what shall now my life?

daz ich unser keime den prîs al hie mac geben!
that I of-us to-none the prize all here may give!

wan ich weiz einen recken, der ist ein starker man,
but I know a warrior, he is a strong man,

der mac uns wol gerechen, als ich gesagen kan.
he may us well avenge, as I tell can.

263 Der ist geheizen Walther von dem Wasgenstein
He is called Walther of the Wasgenstein

und ist an dem Rîne der küensten vürsten ein.
and is on the Rhine of-the boldest princes one.

durch den mînen willen sol er mir bî gestân,
for the my sake shall he me by stand,

sô wil ich mit im teilen allez, daz ich hân.'
so will I with him share all, that I have.'

Dô sprach der küene Walther: 'ich hân'z iu vor geseit, 264
Then spoke the bold Walther: 'I have-it you before told,

sô woltet ir alles wænen, ich rede vor zageheit.
so would you all think, I speak from cowardice.

ich wiste wol, daz der Berner hête manegen guoten man.
I knew well, that the Bernese had many-a good man.

darumbe enlân ich's niht, ich wil den mînen bestân.'
there-for leave I-it not, I will the mine attack.'

Dô sprach der junge Dietleip: 'ich hân mich's ane genomen, 265
Then spoke the young Dietleib: 'I have myself-of-it on taken,

ich bin durch sînen willen an den Rîn komen.
I am for his sake to the Rhine come.

ich wil mit ime strîten', sprach der junge man,
I will with him fight', spoke the young man,

'swie er bî sînen zîten sô vil grôzer dinge habe getân.'
'however he in his times so many great things have done.'

Des dankete im der von Berne und her Hiltebrant. 266
For-that thanked him he of Bern and sir Hildebrand.

den schilt begunde er vazzen, den helm er ûf gebant.
the shield began he grasp, the helmet he on bound.

er spranc in den garten, alsô wir'z hân vernomen.
he sprang into the garden, as we-it have heard.

wol gar schierer Walther was gein ime komen.
full wholly quicker Walther was toward him come.

Dô sprach der von Wasgensteine: 'bist du Biterolfes barn? 267
Then spoke he of Wasgenstein: 'art thou Biterolf's child?

wer hât dich ze strîte her gein mir erkorn?
who has thee to battle hither against me chosen?

du bist niht gewahsen noch ze eime man:
thou art not grown yet to a man:

wie wilt du eime recken mit strîte vor gestân?'
how wilt thou to-a warrior with battle before stand?'

268 Dô sprach gar zornlîche der junge Dietleip:
Then spoke wholly wrathfully the young Dietleib:

'waz welt ir, werder recke, mîner kintheit?
'what will you, worthy warrior, of-my childhood?

des bringe ich iuch wol innen', sprach der junge man,
of-that bring I you well aware', spoke the young man,

'nu enschônet mînes lîbes niht, sô tuon ich iu daz sam.'
'now spare my body not, so do I to-you the same.'

269 Dô sprach der küene Walther: 'waz sol der übermuot?
Then spoke the bold Walther: 'what shall the arrogance?

waz hilfet guotiu triuwe, der darwider übel tuot?
what helps good faith, who there-against ill does?

guotiu triuwe an tôren lützel helfen kan.'
good faith in fools little help can.'

dô sprungen sie zesamene, die mortgrimmen man.
then sprang they together, the murder-grim men.

270 Sie striten mit einander, als ich iu sagen wil:
They fought with one-another, as I you tell will:

manheit unde sterke sie beide hêten vil.
manhood and strength they both had much.

ir helme und ir brünne liezen dô ir schîn,
their helmets and their mail-shirts let then their shine,

dardurch ran ir beider bluot. des lachete diu künegîn.
there-through ran their both's blood. at-that laughed the queen.

Ir goltvarwe schilte schrieten sie von der hant, 271
Their gold-colored shields cut they from the hand,

daz sie in kleinen stücken von in stuben ûf daz lant.
that they in small pieces from them scattered upon the land.

sie liezen von ir schirmen, die zwêne küenen man:
they left from their parrying, the two bold men:

helme und ouch ir schilte zerhiewen sie ûf dem plân.
helmets and also their shields hewed-apart they upon the field.

Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant: 'seht ir, vrou künegîn, 272
Then spoke master Hildebrand: 'see you, lady queen,

wie dise recken strîtent? ez muoz ir ende sîn.
how these warriors fight? it must their end be.

ir einer mac dem andern niht gesigen an.
of-them one may to-the other not win on.

sie slahent tiefe wunden: von schirmen hânt sie gelân.'
they strike deep wounds: from parrying have they left.'

Dô sprach diu küneginne: 'nu saget mir, wîser man, 273
Then spoke the queen: 'now tell me, wise man,

wie sol ich sie nu scheiden, die recken lobesam?'
how shall I them now part, the warriors praiseworthy?'

'sô jeht in siges beiden, vil edeliu künegîn,
'so grant them of-victory both, very noble queen,

und gebet ir iegelîchem ein rôsenkrenzelîn.'
and give of-them each a rose-wreath.'

Kriemhilt diu küneginne langer dô niht beit, 274
Kriemhild the queen longer then not waited,

mit zwein krenzelînen si sich dô bereit.
with two little-wreaths she herself then prepared.

si sprach: 'ir beide habet danc, ir sît zwêne biderman,
she spoke: 'you both have thanks, you are two worthy-men,
ir hât in den rôsen daz beste beide wol getân.
you have in the roses the best both well done.

275 Ir hât beide gewunnen, des wil ich iu jehen,
You have both won, that will I to-you avow,
ritter unde vrouwen hânt ez wol gesehen.
knights and ladies have it well seen.
nu lât von iuwerm strîte, ir sült gesellen sîn,
now leave from your fighting, you shall comrades be,
sô gibe ich [iuwer] iegelîchem ein rôsenkrenzelîn.'
so give I [of-you] each a rose-wreath.'

276 Sie bunden abe die helme und nigen der künegîn.
They bound off the helmets and bowed to-the queen.
ûf satzte's ir iegelîchem ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
up set-she of-them each a rose-wreath,
ein helsen und ein küssen gap si dô ie dem man.
an embrace and a kiss gave she then ever to-the man.
dô wurden eitgesellen die stolzen recken wolgetân.
then became sworn-comrades the proud warriors well-made.

277 Dô sprach der von Berne: 'ir hât beide wol gestriten
Then spoke he of Bern: 'you have both well fought
in dem rôsengarten nâch ritterlîchen siten.
in the rose-garden after knightly customs.
der anger ist bekleidet mit iuwer beider bluot.
the meadow is clad with your both's blood.
Kriemhilt diu küneginne ist vil diu baz gemuot.'
Kriemhild the queen is very the better minded.'

Gibich calls on Volker of Alzey, who springs into the garden with a fiddle of red gold on his shield and offers to fiddle the best he can. Ortwin, a warrior of Dietrich's side and not the slain giant, asks who he is; Hildebrand names him and sends Ortwin against him, and Ortwin threatens to cut the fiddle to pieces. Volker boasts of his fiddle-bow, but Ortwin deals him so many hard blows that sweat and blood run through his rings and the minstrel must give way. Kriemhild gives Ortwin his wreath and kiss.

Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'wâ ist nu Volkêr, 278
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'where is now Volker,

dâher von Alzeie ein stolzer degen hêr?
hither from Alzey a proud thane lordly?

mit deme sô wil ich teilen bürge unde lant.
with him so will I share castles and land.

des lâz mich geniezen, vil küener wîgant.'
of-that let me profit, very bold fighter.'

Dô sprach der küene Volkêr: 'ich nime es mich an. 279
Then spoke the bold Volker: 'I take it myself on.

ich wil mit eime videln des besten, des ich kan.'
I will with someone fiddle the best, that I can.'

den schilt begunde er vazzen (dô wolte er in die nôt),
the shield began he grasp (then would he into the need),

darane stuont ein videl, diu was von golde rôt.
there-on stood a fiddle, which was of gold red.

Dô spranc in den garten Volkêr der spilman: 280
Then sprang into the garden Volker the minstrel:

'swer gein mir welle vehten, der trete ûf den plân.'
'whoever against me will fight, he step upon the field.'

‘wer ist der mit der videln?’ sprach dô Ortwîn,
‘who is he with the fiddle?’ spoke then Ortwin,

‘er gât sô ritterlîche, er mac ein degen sîn.’
‘he goes so knightly, he may a thane be.’

281 ‘Er ist geheizen Volkêr,’ sprach meister Hiltebrant,
‘He is called Volker,’ spoke master Hildebrand,

‘mit deme solt du vehten, ein küener wîgant.’
‘with him shalt thou fight, a bold fighter.’

‘ich bestân in willeclîche,’ sprach dô Ortwîn,
‘I attack him willingly,’ spoke then Ortwin,

‘ich verschrôte ime die videln, des sült ir sicher sîn,
‘I cut-up for-him the fiddle, of-that shall you sure be,

282 Daz er nie mê gevidelt keime guoten man.’
That he never more fiddled for-any good man.’

Ortwîn der küene spranc ûf den grüenen plân.
Ortwin the bold sprang upon the green field.

‘waz welt ir mit der videln?’ alsô sprach Ortwîn,
‘what will you with the fiddle?’ so spoke Ortwin,

‘ich bin durch kurzewîle niht komen an den Rîn.’
‘I am for pastime not come to the Rhine.’

283 Dô sprach der küene Volkêr: ‘ein videler wil ich noch sîn.
Then spoke the bold Volker: ‘a fiddler will I still be.

ich kan wol gestrîchen mit dem videlbogen mîn:
I can well stroke with the fiddle-bow mine:

swaz ich dâmite erreiche, daz muoz von einander gân.’
whatever I there-with reach, that must from one-another go.’

sie liefen beide einander vîl grimmeclîchen an.
they ran both one-another very grimly at.

Ortwîn der degen küene vil grôzer sterke pflac: 284
Ortwin the thane bold very great strength had:
er gap dem videlære vil manegen herten slac,
he gave the fiddler very many-a hard blow,
daz ime der sweiz und ouch daz bluot durch die ringe ran.
that to-him the sweat and also the blood through the rings ran.
dô muoste von ime entwîchen Volkêr der spilman.
then must from him give-way Volker the minstrel.

Kriemhilt diu küneginne gap dô Ortwîn 285
Kriemhild the queen gave then Ortwin
ein helsen und ein küssen und ein rôsenkrenzelîn.
an embrace and a kiss and a rose-wreath.
Ortwîn der küene gienc ûz dem garten dan.
Ortwin the bold went out-of the garden thence.
wol enpfienc in der von Berne und alle sîne man.
well received him he of Bern and all his men.

Gibich laments his shame, and Hagen offers to avenge them all. Hildebrand sends the faithful Eckehart, who goes courteously into the roses; the two greet each other and declare the truce at an end, and fight so hard that the roses are trodden into the ground. Eckehart is first to grow angry, wounds Hagen deep, and drives him to flight. Kriemhild parts them cunningly and sets a wreath on Eckehart, but he refuses the kiss of a faithless maiden.

286 Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'unser schande diu ist grôz:
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'our shame that is great:
keiner kurzewîle mich noch nie sô sêre verdrôz.
of-no pastime me yet ever so sorely irked.
ach rîcher Crist von himel, daz wil ich dir klagen!
ah rich Christ from heaven, that will I to-thee lament!
nu enweiz ich der uns reche, die uns sint erslagen.'
now not-know I who for-us avenges, those-who to-us are slain.'

287 Dô sprach der helt Hagene: 'lieber herre mîn,
Then spoke the hero Hagen: 'dear lord mine,
ich wil uns alle rechen, oder ez muoz mîn ende sîn.'
I will us all avenge, or it must my end be.'
den schilt begunde er vazzen, der vil küene man.
the shield began he grasp, the very bold man.
man sach in ritterlîche springen ûf den plân.
one saw him knightly spring upon the field.

288 Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant: 'sihst du daz, Eckehart?
Then spoke master Hildebrand: 'seest thou that, Eckehart?
du getriuwer degen, nu hebe dich ûf die vart.
thou faithful thane, now raise thyself upon the way.

mit deme sô solt du vehten, ein getriuwer man.
with him so shalt thou fight, a faithful man.
du hâst bî dînen zîten gar grôziu dinc getân.'
thou hast in thy times wholly great things done.'

Dô sprach gezogenlîche der getriuwe Eckehart: 289
Then spoke courteously the faithful Eckehart:
'unser beider strîten enwirt niht langer gespart.'
'our both's fighting will-be not longer spared.'
den schult begunde er vazzen, der getriuwe man.
the shield began he grasp, the faithful man.
er sûmte sich niht langer, er spranc ûf den plân.
he delayed himself not longer, he sprang upon the field.

Dô wuot durch die rôsen der getriuwe Eckehart, 290
Then waded through the roses the faithful Eckehart,
dô begegente ime Hagene mit einer snellen vart.
then met him Hagen with a swift course.
sie gruozten dô einander, die recken unverzeit.
they greeted then one-another, the warriors undaunted.
nâch dem guoten gruoze der vride wart ûf geseit.
after the good greeting the truce was up said.

In dem rôsengarten huop sich ein michel spil. 291
In the rose-garden raised itself a great game.
sie trâten in den anger der liehten rôsen vil.
they trod into the meadow of-the bright roses many.
sie striten krefteclîche, [die zwêne küenen man.
they fought mightily, [the two bold men.

ez wurden tiefe wunden mit den swerten geslân
there were deep wounds with the swords struck

durch helm und durch brünne,] alsô wir'z hân vernomen.
through helmet and through mail-shirt,] as we-it have heard.

zwêne küene helde wâren zesamene komen.
two bold heroes were together come.

292 Aller êrste wart erzürnet der getriuwe Eckehart:
Of-all first was angered the faithful Eckehart:

an lief er den helt Hagenen mit einer snellen vart.
on ran he the hero Hagen with a swift course.

er sluoc im tiefe wunden, dem mortgrimmen man.
he struck him deep wounds, the murder-grim man.

Hagene muoste vliehen vor im ûf dem plân.
Hagen must flee before him upon the field.

293 Dô kam diu küneginne ze der selben zît
Then came the queen at the same time

unde schiet mit listen der zweier recken strît.
and parted with cunning the two warriors' battle.

ûf satzte's Eckeharte ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
up set-she to-Eckehart a rose-wreath,

dô wolte si in küssen. 'des enmac niht gesîn.
then would she him kiss. 'that may not be.

294 Daz mir daz widervüere, daz wære mir iemer leit:
That to-me that should-befall, that would-be to-me ever grievous:

ich enlân mich niht küssen eine ungetriuwe meit.'
I let myself not kiss a faithless maiden.'

dô gienc ûz dem garten der degen lobesam.
then went out-of the garden the thane praiseworthy.

wol enpfienc in der von Berne und alle sîne man.
well received him he of Bern and all his men.

XIII · HELMSCHROT AND GERNOT

King Gernot, calling it a disgrace to live in shame, takes his gold-colored shield and blames his sister for it; he springs into the garden and calls for an opponent. Hildebrand sends young Helmschrot, and the two princes fight knightly over the wide meadow until Helmschrot, first to grow angry, drives Gernot to flight around the ladies in fear of death. Kriemhild sets the wreath on Helmschrot and gives him his embrace and kiss.

'Owê dirre schanden!' sprach der künec Gêrnôt, 295
'Alas of-this shame!' spoke the king Gernot,

'ê daz ich in laster lebete, vil lieber wære ich tôt.'
'before that I in disgrace lived, very rather were I dead.'

dô hiez er ime bringen sînen goltvarwen schilt.
then bade he to-him bring his gold-colored shield.

'uns hât brâht ze laster mîn swester Kriemhilt.'
'us has brought to disgrace my sister Kriemhild.'

Dô spranc in den garten der vürste lobesam. 296
Then sprang into the garden the prince praiseworthy.

man sach in ritterlîche durch die rôsen gân:
one saw him knightly through the roses go:

dô rief ûz dem garten der künec Gêrnôt:
then called out-of the garden the king Gernot:

'swer mit mir welle strîten, der springe in dise rôsen rôt.'
'whoever with me will fight, he spring into these roses red.'

297 Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant: 'hœrst du daz, Helmschrôt?
Then spoke master Hildebrand: 'hearest thou that, Helmschrot?

dir enpiutet ûz dem garten der künec Gêrnôt,
to-thee announces out-of the garden the king Gernot,

daz du ze ime springest in die rôsen rôt.'
that thou to him springest into the roses red.'

* * *
(lacuna)

298 Dô sprach der junge Helmschrôt: 'ich wil in gerne bestân.'
Then spoke the young Helmschrot: 'I will him gladly attack.'

den schilt begunde er vazzen, er spranc ûf den plân.
the shield began he grasp, he sprang upon the field.

dô wuot er durch die rôsen, sô wir ez hân vernomen.
then waded he through the roses, as we it have heard.

zwêne werde vürsten zesamene wâren komen.
two worthy princes together were come.

299 Sie sluogen ûf einander, die zwêne küenen man.
They struck upon one-another, the two bold men.

wie gar ritterlîche sie striten ûf dem plân!
how wholly knightly they fought upon the field!

sie teilten dô ir eigen bluot ûf dem anger wît.
they shared then their own blood upon the meadow wide.

von den helden beiden huop sich ein vil grôzer strît.
from the heroes both raised itself a very great battle.

300 Aller êrste wart erzürnet Helmschrôt der degen:
Of-all first was angered Helmschrot the thane:

an lief er Gêrnôten mit herteclîchen slegen.
on ran he Gernot with hard blows.

dô muoste von im wîchen der küene Gêrnôt.
then must from him give-way the bold Gernot.

er lief vor den vrouwen umbe, sô sêre vorhte er den tôt.
he ran before the ladies around, so sorely feared he the death.

Dô sûmte sich niht langer Kriemhilt diu künegîn 301
Then delayed herself not longer Kriemhild the queen

und satzte ûf Helmschrôte ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
and set on Helmschrot a rose-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen gap si dem jungen man.
an embrace and a kiss gave she to-the young man.

Helmschrôt der junge gienc ûz dem garten dan.
Helmschrot the young went out-of the garden thence.

XIV · AMELOLT AND GUNTHER

King Gunther, angry that none of his side can stand, resolves to fight his own man. Hildebrand sends Duke Amelolt, who swears he will never be kind to that lineage. The two princes hew each other's shields from their hands and split helmets and mail, and Amelolt wounds the king so deeply he would have been slain but for Kriemhild, who saves her brother's life. She crowns Amelolt, who says he has given the king his wage, and Hildebrand laughs.

Dô sprach vil zornlîche der künec Gunther: 302
Then spoke very wrathfully the king Gunther:

'unser keiner ist sô küene, der sich setze ze wer,
'of-us none is so bold, who himself set to defense,

er enmüeze vor in vliehen oder vallen ûf den plân.
he but-must before them flee or fall upon the field.

darumbe enlân ich's niht, ich wil den mînen ouch bestân.'
there-for leave I-it not, I will the mine also attack.'

303 Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant: 'hœrst du daz, Amelolt?
Then spoke master Hildebrand: 'hearest thou that, Amelolt?

der recke klaget sêre, mit deme du vehten solt.
the warrior laments sorely, with whom thou fight shalt.

daz sie sint worden sigelôs, wie vaste er daz kleit!
that they are become victoryless, how fast he that laments!

sprinc ze ime in den garten, stolzer degen vil gemeit.'
spring to him into the garden, proud thane very gay.'

304 'Ich bestân in willeclîche,' sprach herzoge Amelolt,
'I attack him willingly,' spoke duke Amelolt,

'swaz des geslehtes ist, dem wirde ich niemer holt.
'whatever of-the lineage is, to-that become I never favorable.

kein helt wart nie sô küene, sie habent in vür niht.
no hero was ever so bold, they have him for nothing.

es enhât mich niht wunder, daz in smâcheit dâvon geschiht.'
it has me not wonder, that to-them insult there-from happens.'

305 Den schilt begunde vazzen der unverzeite degen.
The shield began grasp the undaunted thane.

dô spranc in die rôsen der herzoge ûzerwegen.
then sprang into the roses the duke chosen.

des erschrac niht sêre der künec Gunther,
at-that was-startled not sorely the king Gunther,

er ensûmte sich niht langer, er spranc gein ime her.
he delayed himself not longer, he sprang toward him hither.

306 Dô sie zesamene kâmen, die vürsten unverzeit,
When they together came, the princes undaunted,

dô wart vîntlîche von in beiden widerseit.
then was hostilely by them both defied.

ir goltvarwe schilte schrieten sie von der hant.
their gold-colored shields cut they from the hand.

helm unde brünne wart von in durch entrant.
helmet and mail-shirt was by them through split.

Amelolt der küene was gar ein starker man, 307
Amelolt the bold was wholly a strong man,

er lief gar grimmeclîche dô den künec an
he ran wholly grimly then the king at

und sluoc im tiefe wunden, alsô wir'z hœren sagen.
and struck him deep wounds, as we-it hear tell.

wan sîn swester Kriemhilt, sô wære er ze tôde erslagen.
but-for his sister Kriemhild, so would-be he to death slain.

Dô kam diu küneginne in einer kurzen zît 308
Then came the queen in a short time

und gevriste ir bruoder sînen jungen lîp.
and saved her brother his young life.

ûf satzte's Amelolte ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
up set-she to-Amelolt a rose-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen gap ime diu künegîn.
an embrace and a kiss gave him the queen.

Dô gienc ûz dem garten der herzoge Amelolt. 309
Then went out-of the garden the duke Amelolt.

er sprach: 'ich hân dem künege gegeben sînen solt.'
he spoke: 'I have to-the king given his wage.'

des begunde lachen der alte Hiltebrant.
at-that began laugh the old Hildebrand.

wol enpfienc in der von Berne und manec wîgant.
well received him he of Bern and many-a fighter.

Gibich, seeing his warriors win no fortune, goes into the roses himself, and Hildebrand springs in against him. The king praises Hildebrand's wisdom, Hildebrand warns that no man should praise his own manhood, and they fight until fire flies from their helmets. Hildebrand fells the king with a parrying blow, and Kriemhild begs him to spare her father. He takes her wreath but refuses her kiss, keeping it for his own lady, and bids them carry Gibich to his lodging.

310 Dô sprach der künec Gibeche: 'waz sol unser leben,
Then spoke the king Gibich: 'what shall our life,

sît ich und mîne recken müezen in schanden streben?
since I and my warriors must in shames strive?

wir hân in dem garten keiner sælde niht.
we have in the garden of-no fortune anything.

ich wil selbe in die rôsen, swaz mir dâvon geschiht.'
I will myself into the roses, whatever to-me there-of happens.'

311 Dô spranc in den garten der künec al zehant.
Then sprang into the garden the king all at-once.

'dort vert der künec hêre,' sô sprach Hiltebrant.
'there goes the king lordly,' so spoke Hildebrand.

wie balde künec Gibeche dô sînen kempfen vant!
how quickly king Gibich then his champion found!

Hiltebrant der alte ze ime in den garten spranc.
Hildebrand the old to him into the garden sprang.

312 Dô sprach der künec Gibeche ze dem recken unverzeit:
Then spoke the king Gibich to the warrior undaunted:

'ich hân vil vernomen von iuwer wîsheit.'
'I have much heard of your wisdom.'

‘daz ist, alsô got wil,’ sprach meister Hiltebrant,
‘that is, as God wills,’ spoke master Hildebrand,

‘ez mac iu ze vruo komen, vil küener wîgant.
‘it may to-you too early come, very bold fighter.

Nieman sol selbe loben sîne manheit, 313
No-one shall himself praise his manhood,

ob ime misselinge, daz ez ime iht werde leit.
if to-him it-miscarry, that it to-him not become grievous.

ez kumt maneger in sîn alter, der niht sinne enhât,
there comes many-a-one into his age, who not sense has,

dem doch vil nôt wære, gæbe man im wîsen rât.
to-whom yet much need would-be, should-give one him wise counsel.

Man missebiutet ez gerne, der niht sælde enhât: 314
One mistreats it gladly, who not fortune has:

er wirt ze eime tôren, swenn ez im übel gât.’
he becomes to a fool, when it to-him ill goes.’

dô sprach der künec Gibeche ûz ungevüegem zorn:
then spoke the king Gibich out-of monstrous anger:

‘nu sî iu widersaget, ir recke hôchgeborn.’
‘now be to-you defied, you warrior high-born.’

Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant der alte unverzeit: 315
Then spoke master Hildebrand the old undaunted:

‘daz hât mich gar unbillîch, daz ir mir widerseit.
‘that has me wholly unfittingly, that you to-me defy.

swaz wir nu beide einander ze leide hân getân,
whatever we now both one-another to grief have done,

daz verenden wir mit den swerten, die rede süln wir lân.’
that finish we with the swords, the speech shall we leave.’

316 Dô nam diu rede ein ende von den vürsten unverzeit.
Then took the speech an end from the princes undaunted.

sie griffen ze den swerten. ir schilte wâren breit.
they grasped to the swords. their shields were broad.

dô striten mit einander die zwêne wîsen man.
then fought with one-another the two wise men.

vil harte ritterlîche wart ez von in getân.
very greatly knightly was it by them done.

317 Sie vâhten mit einander, ir manheit diu was grôz:
They fought with one-another, their manhood that was great:

daz viur von ir helmen hôch in die lüfte schôz.
the fire from their helmets high into the airs shot.

sie striten mit einander, ir keiner mohte gesigen.
they fought with one-another, of-them none might win.

dô hêten sie sich beide des lîbes gar verzigen.
then had they themselves both of-the life wholly renounced.

318 Hiltebrant der alte in strîte witze pflac:
Hildebrand the old in battle wits kept:

er gap dem künege Gibechen einen schirmslac,
he gave to-the king Gibich a parry-blow,

daz er dô muoste vallen ûf den grüenen plân.
that he then must fall upon the green field.

des erschrac sîn tohter und alle sîne man.
at-that was-startled his daughter and all his men.

319 Kriemhilt diu küneginne diu stuont ûf zehant:
Kriemhild the queen she stood up at-once:

'durch aller vrouwen êre, getriuwer Hiltebrant,
'for all ladies' honor, faithful Hildebrand,

nu enslaht mir niht ze tôde den lieber vater mîn.'
now slay me not to death the dear father mine.'

dô sprach Hiltebrant der alte: 'wâ ist denne mîn krenzelîn?'
then spoke Hildebrand the old: 'where is then my little-wreath?'

Ein krenzelîn von rôsen gap ime diu schœne meit, 320
A little-wreath of roses gave him the fair maiden,

ouch wolte si dô küssen den recken unverzeit.
also would she then kiss the warrior undaunted.

dô sprach Hiltebrant der alte: 'des ensol niht sîn.
then spoke Hildebrand the old: 'that shall not be.

ich wil ez heim behalten der lieben vrouwen mîn.
I will it home keep for-the dear lady mine.

Ich hête es lützel êre, daz kan ich iu gesagen. 321
I would-have of-it little honor, that can I you tell.

nu heizet iuwern vater ze der herberge tragen.'
now bid your father to the lodging carry.'

dô gienc ûz dem garten der alte Hiltebrant.
then went out-of the garden the old Hildebrand.

wol enpfienc in der von Berne und manec wîgant.
well received him he of Bern and many-a fighter.

Siegfried mocks Dietrich's delay. Dietrich refuses to fight him, citing his sword Balmung, his mail made by Eckerich, and his horny skin, until Hildebrand strikes him in the mouth and is nearly killed with the flat of his sword. Wolfhart's taunts drive him into the garden, where Siegfried wounds him; at Hildebrand's bidding Wolfhart falsely cries that Hildebrand is dead, and fire bursts from Dietrich's mouth. He cuts through Siegfried's horn, Siegfried flees into Kriemhild's lap, and Hildebrand calms Dietrich, who wins the queen's wreath, embrace, and kiss.

322 Sîvrit von Niderlande reit ûf den grüenen plân:
Siegfried of Netherlands rode upon the green field:

'wâ ist nu der mîne, der mich sol bestân?
'where is now the mine, who me shall attack?

vürhtet er sich sô sêre oder trûwet er niht genesen?
fears he himself so sorely or trusts he not survive?

jâ solten wir von rehte die êrsten sîn gewesen.
yea should we by right the first be been.

323 Man seit uns, er wære küene, der vürste hôchgeborn:
One tells us, he were bold, the prince high-born:

daz er sô zage wære, daz hête ich wol versworn.
that he so coward were, that would-have I well forsworn.

warzuo sûmet er sich sô lange? er hât niht recken sin.
to-what delays he himself so long? he has not warriors' sense.

swie ich ez kan gevüegen, er kumet es niemer hin.'
however I it can manage, he comes of-it never away.'

324 Dô sprach meister Hiltebrant: 'herre, hœrt ir daz?
Then spoke master Hildebrand: 'lord, hear you that?

iuch strâfet der hürnîne und ist iu gar gehaz.
you rebukes the horny-one and is to-you wholly hostile.

vil edeler vürste von Berne, gedenket an schœniu wîp
very noble prince of Bern, think on fair women
und vehtet mit Sîvride und wâget iuwern lîp.
and fight with Siegfried and stake your life.

[Iuch strâfet vlîzeclîche der hôchvertige man, 325
[*You rebukes zealously the haughty man,*
und hât ime bî iuwern zîten nie kein leit getân.
and have to-him in your times never any grief done.
des lâz du in enkelten, vil edeler vürste guot,
for-that let thou him pay, very noble prince good,
daz er dir übel sprichet durch sînen übermuot.]'
that he to-thee ill speaks through his arrogance.]'

Dô sprach der von Berne: 'hêtest du mîn in triuwen pfliht, 326
Then spoke he of Bern: 'hadst thou of-me in faith charge,
du enrietest mir mit Sîvride hie ze strîten niht.
thou wouldst-counsel me with Siegfried here to fight not.
ir enrâtet mir niht wan ze kampfe spâte und vruo:
you counsel me nothing but to combat late and early:
ir unde Wolfhart bringet ez tâlanc darzuo.
you and Wolfhart bring it all-day there-to.

Râtet ir mir von dem lîbe, vor vürsten sît ir ein wiht: 327
(If)-counsel you me from the life, before princes are you a nothing:
doch lât iu mîn bruoder mînes erbes niht.
yet leaves to-you my brother of-my inheritance nothing.
würd ich in disem garten hie ze tôde erslagen,
were I in this garden here to death slain,
sô würdet ir nâch mîm tôde mich gar sêre klagen.'
so would you after my death me wholly sorely lament.'

328 [Dô sprach der alte Hiltebrant: ‘ir velschet uns daran.
[Then spoke the old Hildebrand: ‘you falsify us there-in.

* * *
(lacuna)

wir râten iu ze aller zît ze aller wirdekeit,
we counsel you at all time to all worthiness,

dâvon iuwer êre werde michel unde breit.’
there-from your honor become great and broad.’

329 ‘Bestüende ich Sîvriden, ez gienge mir an daz leben,’
‘Should-attack I Siegfried, it would-go to-me at the life,’

alsô sprach der von Berne, ‘hœrâ, wîser [man und] degen:
so spoke he of Bern, ‘hear, wise [man and] thane:

er ersluoc ûf eime steine einen trachen vreissam,
he slew upon a stone a dragon dreadful,

dem mohten alle künege niht gesigen an.
to-that might all kings not win on.

330 Er hât bî sînen zîten recken vil erslagen.
He has in his times warriors many slain.

dannoch sint driu dinc an im, diu wil ich dir sagen:
besides are three things in him, which will I thee tell:

er treit ein swert sô guot, daz er ûf dem steine vant,
he carries a sword so good, which he upon the stone found,

daz herte helme velschet und ist Balmunc genant.
which hard helmets falsifies and is Balmung named.

331 Daz ander ist ein brünne, daz wizze sicherlîch,
The second is a mail-shirt, that know surely,

die macht aller brünnen meister, der werde Eckerîch.
that made of-all mail-shirts master, the worthy Eckerich.

er hât in von kinde in der smitten erzogen,
he has him from child in the smithy reared,

dâvon ist der helt an der brünne unbetrogen.
there-from is the hero in the mail-shirt undeceived.

Er worhte sie wol mit vlîze nâch der meisterschaft. 332
He wrought it well with diligence after the mastery.

er wiste wol, daz er solte gewinnen grôze kraft.
he knew well, that he should win great power.

goldes und gesteines lît gar vil dar an.
of-gold and of-gemstones lies wholly much there on.

kein swert wart nie sô guot, daz sie gewinnen kan.
no sword was ever so good, that it win can.

Daz dritte wil ich dir nennen, daz er ist hürnîn 333
The third will I thee name, that he is horny

und wil âne sorge vor allen recken sîn.
and will without care before all warriors be.

daz ich mit ime væhte, ich wære ein tumber man:
that I with him should-fight, I would-be a foolish man:

rât mir niht mit ime ze vehten, wilt du mîne hulde hân.']
counsel me not with him to fight, (if)-wilt thou my favor have.']

'Owê mînes leides!' sprach meister Hiltebrant, 334
'Alas my grief!' spoke master Hildebrand,

'sült ir under allen recken iemer sîn geschant?
'shall you among all warriors ever be shamed?

daz ich'z dâ heime niht enwiste, daz wil ich gote klagen.
that I-it there at-home not knew, that will I to-God lament.

süln nu alle recken ir gespötte von iu haben?'
shall now all warriors their mockery of you have?'

335 [Dô sprach gar zornlîche her Dietrîch von Berne:
[Then spoke wholly wrathfully sir Dietrich of Bern:

‘ir sæhet mich mit Sîvride strîten alsô gerne.
‘you would-see me with Siegfried fight so gladly.

ich hête in êrste bestanden, wær er niht hürnîn,
I would-have him first attacked, were he not horny,

und ob er under allen recken der bœste wolte sîn.’
and if he among all warriors the worst would be.’

336 Dô sprach gar zornlîche der alte Hiltebrant:
Then spoke wholly wrathfully the old Hildebrand:

‘noch ist nieman in dem garten wan Sîvrit ûz Niderlant.
‘still is no-one in the garden but Siegfried from Netherlands.

ez hât unser iegelîcher dem sînen gesiget an.
there has of-us each over-the his won on.

er wartet iuwer in dem garten, swenn ir in welt bestân.’]
he waits for-you in the garden, whenever you him will attack.’]

337 ‘Du sæhest alsô gerne, daz ich verlür daz leben mîn,
‘Thou wouldst-see so gladly, that I should-lose the life mine,

und daz ich in dem garten bestüende den hürnîn.
and that I in the garden should-attack the horny-one.

swaz du mir des gerætest, ez dünket mich ein wiht:
whatever thou me of-that counselest, it seems me a nothing:

Sîvrides von Niderlande des bestân ich niht.’
Siegfried of Netherlands him attack I not.’

338 Er sprach: ‘lieber herre, nu volget mir hin dan,
He spoke: ‘dear lord, now follow me away thence,

ob ich beidenthalben einen rât vinden kan,
whether I on-both-sides a counsel find can,

wie wir bestân mit êren vor Kriemhilt der künegîn,
how we stand with honors before Kriemhild the queen,

ob ir beidenthalben ungevohten möhtet sîn.'
whether you on-both-sides unfought might be.'

Er brâhte in von dem gesinde dan in einen grunt. 339
He brought him from the household thence into a hollow.

er sprach: 'herre von Berne, sît ir ungesunt?
he spoke: 'lord of Bern, are you unsound?

sô saget mir, lieber herre, warumb nâmet ir's iuch an,
so tell me, dear lord, why took you-it yourself on,

dô ir in dem garten des iuwern niht enwoltet bestân?'
when you in the garden the yours not would attack?'

'Du strâfest mich vil ze lange,' sprach her Dietrîch, 340
'Thou rebukest me very too long,' spoke sir Dietrich,

'ich hête in êrste bestanden, wære er mîn gelîch.
'I would-have him first attacked, were he my like.

hête er vleisch und bein, ich wolte in gerne bestân,
had he flesh and bone, I would him gladly attack,

und ob er vier brünne hêt über einander ane getân.'
and if he four mail-shirts had over one-another on done.'

'Jâ,' sprach meister Hiltebrant, 'man sol iuch ein vorteil geben. 341
'Yea,' spoke master Hildebrand, 'one shall you an advantage give.

ir getorstet gein wilden würmen wol wâgen iuwer leben:
you dared against wild worms well stake your life:

dort in eime walde dâ wâret ir manheit vol:
there in a wood there were you of-manhood full:

ir vehtet niht vor vrouwen, dâ man prîs bejagen sol.
you fight not before ladies, where one prize hunt shall.

342 Bestât ir in niht balde, ich mache iuch ungesunt.'
(If)-attack you him not quickly, I make you unsound.'

'wie wilt du ez ane grîfen?' 'daz tuon ich dir kunt.'
'how wilt thou it on grasp?' 'that make I to-thee known.'

her Hiltebrant der alte sîne vûst hêt ûf gehaben:
sir Hildebrand the old his fist had up raised:

dô wart von dem alten der vürste in sînen munt geslagen.
then was by the old-one the prince into his mouth struck.

343 Er sluoc in sô sêre, daz er viel ûf daz lant.
He struck him so sorely, that he fell upon the land.

her Dietrîch wart erzürnet, des enkalt Hiltebrant.
sir Dietrich was angered, of-that paid Hildebrand.

sîn swert er mit dem knopfe in sîne hant dô nam,
his sword he with the pommel into his hand then took,

dô sluoc er vil swinde sînen dienestman.
then struck he very swiftly his service-man.

344 Er sprach: 'du muost spottes wol werden ungesunt.
He spoke: 'thou must of-mockery well become unsound.

du geslehst mich niemer mêre mit der viuste in mînen munt.'
thou strikest me never more with the fist into my mouth.'

mit sîme vlachen swerte begund er im slege geben,
with his flat sword began he him blows give,

dâvon hête Hiltebrant vil nâch verlorn sîn leben.
there-from had Hildebrand very nearly lost his life.

345 Daz ersach Wolfhart und rief sînen herren an:
That saw Wolfhart and called his lord on:

'waz tuot ir, herre von Berne? slaht ir iuwern dienestman?
'what do you, lord of Bern? strike you your service-man?

[ir getürret vor den vrouwen keinen prîs begân:
[you dare before the ladies no prize achieve:

dâ ez nieman sæhe, dâ wâret ir ein küener man.
where it no-one should-see, there were you a bold man.

Swer iuch vür einen recken hât, der ist darane betrogen 346
Whoever you for a warrior has, he is there-in deceived

und hât wærlîche in sînen munt gelogen.]
and has truly into his mouth lied.]

ir strîtet mit den iuwern, die mit iu habent pfliht,
you fight with the yours, who with you have bond,

Sîvrides von Niderlande des bestât ir aber niht.'
Siegfried of Netherlands him attack you but not.'

Dô sprach der Bernære: 'nu lâz die rede stân. 347
Then spoke the Bernese: 'now let the speech stand.

ich hân bî mînen zîten sô zagelîch nie getân.
I have in my times so cowardly never done.

nu ziuch mir her Valken, daz guote ros mîn.
now draw me hither Falke, the good horse mine.

er wirt von mir bestanden, und wære er îtel stehelîn.'
he will-be by me attacked, and were he pure steel.'

Dô sprach der wüetende Wolfhart: 'diu rede gevellet mir wol: 348
Then spoke the raging Wolfhart: 'the speech pleases me well:

ir redet, als ein degen von rehte reden sol.'
you speak, as a thane by right speak shall.'

er zôch im dar sîn ros ûf den grüenen plân.
he drew to-him there his horse upon the green field.

dô spranc in den satel der Berner lobesam.
then sprang into the saddle the Bernese praiseworthy.

349 Dô reit in den garten der Berner al zehant.
Then rode into the garden the Bernese all at-once.

dô kam gein ime vil snelle Sîvrit ûz Niderlant
then came toward him very swiftly Siegfried from Netherlands

ûf eime guoten rosse, alsô wir'z hœren sagen.
upon a good horse, as we-it hear tell.

ez hête in herten strîten nâch hôhen êren in getragen.
it had in hard fights after high honors him borne.

350 'Wâ wâret ir sô lange?' sprach der hürnîn.
'Where were you so long?' spoke the horny-one.

'ich kume dir noch ze vruo ûf die triuwe mîn.
'I come to-thee still too early upon the faith mine.

[ir und diu küneginne künnet spæher liste vil,
[*you and the queen can of-artful cunning much,*

daz ich ûf mîne triuwe niht langer vertragen wil.]
which I upon my faith not longer endure will.]

nu bint ûf den helm, ez mac dir werden leit.
now bind on the helmet, it may to-thee become grief.

durch dîner hôchvart willen sô sî dir widerseit.'
for thy pride's sake so be to-thee defied.'

351 Dô sprach der küene Sîvrit: 'vil edeler voget von Berne,
Then spoke the bold Siegfried: 'very noble lord of Bern,

ich hôrte in eime jâre nie kein dinc sô gerne.'
I heard in a year never any thing so gladly.'

beide sie sich verbunden, die zwêne starken man.
both they themselves bound, the two strong men.

sie ranten grimmeclîche beide einander an.
they charged grimly both one-another at.

Sie triben diu ros zesamene, diu liefen alsô siu vlugen. 352
They drove the horses together, they ran as-if they flew.

ir sper gar zerbrâchen, daz siu in die lüfte stuben.
their spears wholly broke, that they into the airs scattered.

sie beizten von den rossen ze der selben zît.
they dismounted from the horses at the same time.

in dem rôsengarten huop sich ein vil grôzer strît.
in the rose-garden raised itself a very great battle.

Sie sprungen ze einander dâhin ûf die wal 353
They sprang to one-another thither upon the field

und enplôzten von den sîten zwô liehte klingen val.
and bared from the sides two bright blades pale.

sie bugen sich hinder die schilte und huoben ein vehten an,
they bent themselves behind the shields and raised a fighting on,

daz in der sweiz mit kreften durch die ringe ran.
that to-them the sweat with forces through the rings ran.

Sie striten krefteclîche, die zwêne küenen man. 354
They fought mightily, the two bold men.

dô sach man ir beider ringe rîsen ûf den plân.
then saw one their both's rings fall upon the field.

* * *
(lacuna)

und swâ sie hin sprungen, dâ wart der anger bluotgevar.
and wherever they thither sprang, there became the meadow blood-colored.

Sie sluogen ûf einander mit starken slegen grôz, 355
They struck upon one-another with strong blows great,

daz ir beider gesinde der kurzewîle verdrôz.
that their both's household of-the pastime irked.

von ir swertes slegen und von ir helme schal
from their swords' blows and from their helmets' clang

mohte nieman gehœren in dem garten überal.
might no-one hear in the garden everywhere.

356 Sîvrit von Niderlande der was ein starker man.
Siegfried of Netherlands he was a strong man.

er lief vil zornlîche hern Dietrîchen an,
he ran very wrathfully sir Dietrich at,

er sluoc im eine wunden in sînen stahelhuot,
he struck him a wound into his steel-hat,

daz darnâch muoste rinnen von ime sîn eigen bluot.
that there-after must run from him his own blood.

357 'Wie strîtet noch mîn herre?' sprach heimlîch Hiltebrant.
'How fights still my lord?' spoke secretly Hildebrand.

'er vihtet leider übel,' sprach Wolfhart al zehant,
'he fights alas ill,' spoke Wolfhart all at-once,

'er hât eine tiefe wunden in sîme stahelhuot
'he has a deep wound in his steel-hat

und ist vil sêre berunnen mit sîme eigen bluot.'
and is very sorely run-over with his own blood.'

358 'Er ist noch niht erzürnet,' sô sprach her Hiltebrant,
'He is still not angered,' so spoke sir Hildebrand,

'nu ruof in den garten, vil küener wîgant,
'now call into the garden, very bold fighter,

und mane in mînes tôdes, man welle mich begraben:
and remind him of-my death, one will me bury:

sô beginnet mich mîn herre harte sêre klagen.'
so begins me my lord very sorely lament.'

Wolfhart rief in den garten, daz ez durch helm erdôz: 359
Wolfhart called into the garden, that it through helmet resounded:

‘sô mê mir mînes leides, daz ist michel unde grôz!
‘so woe me of-my grief, that is much and great!

Hiltebrant ist erstorben, den wellen wir begraben:
Hildebrand is dead, him will we bury:

verliuse ich mînen herren, wie sol ich daz leit verklagen!’
(if)-lose I my lord, how shall I the grief cease-lamenting!’

‘Ist Hiltebrant erstorben,’ sô sprach her Dietrîch, 360
‘(If)-is Hildebrand dead,’ so spoke sir Dietrich,

‘sô vindet man in ganzen triuwen niender sîn gelîch.
‘so finds one in whole faith nowhere his like.

nu hüete dich, küener Sîvrit, dich gât diu nôt an,
now guard thee, bold Siegfried, thee goes the need on,

ez ist mîn schimpf gewesen, swaz ich unz her gestriten hân.
it is my sport been, whatever I until here fought have.

Ich hân von dînen schulden verlorn einen man, 361
I have through thy guilt lost a man,

den ich unz an mîn ende niht verwinden kan.
whom I until to my end not get-over can.

nu wer dich krefteclîche, des ist dir nu vil nôt.
now defend thee mightily, of-that is to-thee now much need.

uns zwêne enscheidet nieman wan des einen tôt.’
us two parts no-one but the one’s death.’

Dô sprach der küene Sîvrit: ‘ir künnet dröuwens vil. 362
Then spoke the bold Siegfried: ‘you can of-threatening much.

swaz ir mit mir strîtet, daz sol sîn mîn spil.
whatever you with me fight, that shall be my game.

swer's enkiltet an dem houpte, der muoz den schaden hân.'
whoever-it pays on the head, he must the harm have.'

dô liefen sie beide einander griulîchen an.
then ran they both one-another horribly at.

363 [Her Dietrîch von Berne wart gar ein zornec man.
[Sir Dietrich of Bern became wholly a wrathful man.

man sach im eine vlammen ûz sîme munde gân,
one saw from-him a flame out-of his mouth go,

als von der essen tuot daz viur. Sîvride dem wart heiz,
as from the forge does the fire. to-Siegfried to-him was hot,

daz von sîme lîbe durch die ringe ran der sweiz.]
that from his body through the rings ran the sweat.]

364 Hern Dietrîchen von Berne bestuont ein grôzer zorn:
Sir Dietrich of Bern seized a great anger:

dô sluoc er Sîvriden durch harnesch und durch horn,
then struck he Siegfried through harness and through horn,

daz ime sîn bluot vil rôtez vaste vlôz hin ûf daz gras.
that to-him his blood very red fast flowed thither upon the grass.

her Sîvrit muoste vliehen, sô küene als er gewesen was.
sir Siegfried must flee, so bold as he been was.

365 Her Dietrîch jagete in umbe mit starken slegen grôz.
Sir Dietrich chased him around with strong blows great.

dô viel er der küneginne nider in die schôz.
then fell he to-the queen down into the lap.

dô warf si einen stûchen über den küenen degen,
then threw she a veil over the bold thane,

dâmite si gevriste hern Sîvride lîp und leben.
there-with she saved sir Siegfried's body and life.

Dô sprach diu küneginne: 'wurdet ir ie ein biderbe man, 366
Then spoke the queen: 'became you ever a worthy man,

des sült ir disen recken mîn geniezen lân.'
of-that shall you this warrior of-me profit let.'

dô sprach der von Berne: 'diu bete ist ein wiht.
then spoke he of Bern: 'the request is a nothing.

swes ir mich nu bitet, des entuon ich niht.
whatever you me now ask, that do I not.

[iuch ritter unde vrouwen bringe ich alle in nôt,
[you knights and ladies bring I all into need,

ir müezet alle sterben von mir umb Hiltebrandes tôt.]'
you must all die by me for Hildebrand's death.]'

Allez daz in dem garten was, daz wolte er hân erslagen 367
All that in the garden was, that would he have slain

von hern Dietrîches zorne, alsô wir'z hœren sagen.
from sir Dietrich's anger, as we-it hear tell.

Hiltebrant der alte tet als ein biderbe man:
Hildebrand the old did as a worthy man:

er spranc in den garten und rief sînen herren an.
he sprang into the garden and called his lord on.

Er sprach: 'neinâ, lieber herre, lât iuwern grôzen zorn. 368
He spoke: 'no, dear lord, leave your great anger.

ir hât wol gesiget, sô bin ich wider geborn.'
you have well won, so am I again born.'

her Dietrîch der edel sach Hiltebranden an:
sir Dietrich the noble looked Hildebrand at:

dô entsleif im sîn gemüete, dem vürsten lobesam.
then slipped-away from-him his mind, to-the prince praiseworthy.

369 Dô sprach der voget von Berne: 'vil edeliu künegîn,
Then spoke the lord of Bern: 'very noble queen,

nu trîbet iuwern widertrutz selbe wider în,
now drive your counter-defiance yourself back in,

sô lân ich gerne mînen zorn hie an dirre stunt.'
so leave I gladly my anger here at this hour.'

dô sluoc sich diu küneginne mit der viuste in ir munt.
then struck herself the queen with the fist in her mouth.

370 Dô sprach diu küneginne: 'ir sît ein vrumer man,
Then spoke the queen: 'you are a brave man,

wan man iuwern gelîchen niender vinden kan.'
since one your like nowhere find can.'

ûf satzte si deme von Berne ein rôsenkrenzelîn,
up set she to-him of Bern a rose-wreath,

ein helsen und ein küssen muost ime bereit ouch sîn.
an embrace and a kiss must for-him ready also be.

The monk Ilsan rides in on horseback against fifty-two heroes, killing twelve and throwing the rest into such fear that they surrender. He claims his fifty-two wreaths and fifty-two kisses, and rubs the queen with his beard until she bleeds, calling it the kiss for a faithless maiden. Dietrich makes Gibich hold his lands as a fief from him, through Kriemhild's pride, and takes leave; Dietrich and his men ride home to Bern, and Kriemhild never kept a rose garden again.

371

Dô reit in den garten der münech Ilsân:
Then rode into the garden the monk Ilsan:

'wâ sint zwêne und vünfzec, die mich süln bestân?'
'where are two and fifty, who me shall attack?'

zwêne und vünfzec helde kâmen ûf den plân,
two and fifty heroes came upon the field,

die bestuont ze rosse der münech Ilsân.
them attacked on horse the monk Ilsan.

372

Under den zwein und vünfzegen reit in einer an.
Among the two and fifty rode him one at.

er hafte ûf sîme lîbe ein sper der münech Ilsân.
he fixed upon his body a spear the monk Ilsan.

* * *
(lacuna)

die stach er durch einander nider ûf den plân.
them stabbed he through one-another down upon the field.

373

Er valte sie zer erden der vil küene degen:
He felled them to-the earth the very bold thane:

under den zwein und vünfzegen verlurn zwelve ir leben,
among the two and fifty lost twelve their life,

die andern brâhte der münech in solhe angest und nôt,
the others brought the monk into such fear and need,

daz sie die vinger ûf racten, wan sie vorhten den tôt.
that they the fingers up stretched, for they feared the death.

374 Ze der küneginne spranc der münech unverzeit:
To the queen sprang the monk undaunted:

'wâ sint zwei und vünfzec krenzelîn, keiserlîchiu meit?
'where are two and fifty little-wreaths, imperial maiden?

swenne die rôsen gewahsent, sô lât mich wider darîn.'
when the roses have-grown, so let me back there-in.'

zwei und vünfzec krenzelîn gap ime diu künegîn.
two and fifty little-wreaths gave him the queen.

375 Er sprach: 'zwei und vünfzec küssen wil ich von iu hân,
He spoke: 'two and fifty kisses will I from you have,

ich spriche ez ûf mîne triuwe, ir werdet es niht erlân.'
I say it upon my faith, you will-be of-it not spared.'

swenne si in solte küssen, den münech Ilsân,
whenever she him should kiss, the monk Ilsan,

sô reip er sie sô harte, die künegîn wolgetân,
so rubbed he her so hard, the queen well-made,

376 Mit sîme langen barte, den der münech truoc,
With his long beard, which the monk wore,

daz der küneginne darnâch ran daz rôte bluot.
that to-the queen there-after ran the red blood.

'alsô sol ich küssen eine ungetriuwe meit.
'so shall I kiss a faithless maiden.

wær iuwer wille vollebrâht, daz wære mir vil leit.'
were your will accomplished, that would-be to-me very grievous.'

[Dô sprach der von Berne ze der künegîn: 377
[Then spoke he of Bern to the queen:
'iuwer vater Gibeche muoz mîn eigen sîn:
'your father Gibich must my own be:
stete bürge liute und ouch darzuo diu lant
cities castles people and also there-to the lands
muoz er ze lêhen enpfâhen von unser vrîen hant.
must he to fief receive from our free hand.

In reisen und in stürmen muoz er uns sîn undertân 378
In journeys and in assaults must he to-us be subject
mit lande und mit liuten, daz wellen wir von im hân.'
with land and with people, that will we from him have.'
alsô wart der künec eigen und ouch al sîn guot.
so became the king own and also all his goods.
daz machete vrou Kriemhilt und ir übermuot.]
that made lady Kriemhild and her arrogance.]

Dô sprach der Bernære: 'küneginne lobesam, 379
Then spoke the Bernese: 'queen praiseworthy,
hân wir in den rôsen gesiget, sô lât uns urloup hân.'
(if)-have we in the roses won, so let us leave have.'
si sprach: 'nu rîtet mit heile, ir unverzeiter man.
she spoke: 'now ride with salvation, you undaunted man.
swer ime selbe koufet spot, der muoz die schande hân.'
whoever for-him himself buys mockery, he must the shame have.'

Urloup nam her Dietrîch und manec wîgant 380
Leave took sir Dietrich and many-a fighter
und riten heim gein Berne in sîn eigen lant.
and rode home toward Bern into his own land.

sie hêten bî dem Rîne êren vil bejeit.
they had by the Rhine of-honors much hunted.

keinen garten hegete mê Kriemhilt diu schœne meit.
no garden tended more Kriemhild the fair maiden.

XVIII · ILSAN'S RETURN TO THE CLOISTER

At Bern the knights pass the days in tourneys and joy, then take their leave and ride home glad of the honor won on the Rhine. Ilsan asks leave to return to his cloister at Isenburg with the wreaths he promised his brothers. Dietrich offers to share all he has with him, and Ilsan rides home, where his brothers are dismayed that he was not slain. He presses a wreath into each monk's head until the blood runs over their ears, and, fearing his anger, they vow to do penance for his sins; so ends the Rose Garden.

381 [Dô sie ze Berne wâren tac und stunde,
[*When they at Bern were day and hour,*

manec ritter kurzewîle dâ begunde,
many-a knight pastime there began,

turnieren unde stechen und aller vröuden vil.
tourneying and jousting and of-all joys much.

daz triben die ritter edel unz an daz selbe zil,
that drove the knights noble until to the same goal,

382 Unz daz sie urloup nâmen von dem vürsten guot.
Until that they leave took from the prince good.

dô was manec ritter vrisch und hôchgemuot,
then was many-a knight fresh and high-minded,

daz sie vrœlîche kâmen heim in ir lant
that they joyfully came home into their land

von dem Rîne von Wormze, tuot uns diz buoch bekant,
from the Rhine from Worms, makes to-us this book known,

Wan sie grôze êre an dem Rîne hêten erstriten, 383
For they great honor on the Rhine had won-by-fighting,

des kâmen sie vrœlîche alle heim geriten.
of-that came they joyfully all home ridden.

dô sprach gezogenlîche der münech Ilsân:
then spoke courteously the monk Ilsan:

'vil edeler vürste von Berne, lât mich urloup hân.
'very noble prince of Bern, let me leave have.

Ich muoz wider gein Îsenburc in daz klôster guot. 384
I must back toward Isenburg into the cloister good.

jâ gelobete ich mînen bruodern,' sprach der hôchgemuot,
yea vowed I to-my brothers,' spoke the high-minded-one,

'daz ich wolte bringen der rôsen von dem Rîn
'that I would bring of-the roses from the Rhine

und wolt ieglîchem geben ein rôsenkrenzelîn.'
and would to-each give a rose-wreath.'

Dô sprach der von Berne, ein vürste unverzeit: 385
Then spoke he of Bern, a prince undaunted:

'mîn lîp und mîn guot ist dir unverseit,
'my body and my goods is to-thee unrefused,

daz teile ich mit dir gerne, du wunderküener man.
that share I with thee gladly, thou wondrous-bold man.

du hâst mir bî dînen zîten liebes vil getân.'
thou hast to-me in thy times of-love much done.'

Des dankete ime der münech, dem vürsten hôchgemuot. 386
For-that thanked him the monk, the prince high-minded.

dô reit er gein Îsenburc in daz klôster guot.
then rode he toward Isenburg into the cloister good.

dô er in daz klôster kam, alsô wir'z hœren sagen,
when he into the cloister came, as we-it hear tell,

dô erschrâken sîne bruoder, daz er niht was erslagen.
then were-startled his brothers, that he not was slain.

387 Dô hiez er die müneche alle vür sich gân:
Then bade he the monks all before himself go:

'ich bringe diu rôsenkrenzelîn, als ich gelobet hân.'
'I bring the rose-wreaths, as I vowed have.'

ûf satzte er ie dem bruoder ein rôsenkrenzelîn:
up set he ever to-the brother a rose-wreath:

dô dructe er's mit den vingern in diu houpt hinîn,
then pressed he-them with the fingers into the heads in,

388 Daz in'z bluot beidenthalben über die ôren ran.
That to-them-the blood on-both-sides over the ears ran.

er sprach: 'diu rôsenkrenzelîn kâmen mich niht umb sus an.
he spoke: 'the rose-wreaths came me not for nothing on.

næmet ir siu ân smerzen, diu rôsenkrenzelîn,
should-take you them without pain, the rose-wreaths,

des hêtet ir grôze sünde, vil lieben bruoder mîn.'
of-that would-have you great sin, very dear brothers mine.'

sie liten ê ir kumber und ir ungemach,
they suffered rather their trouble and their discomfort,

ir keiner ez widerrette. vor vorhte daz geschach.
of-them none it gainsaid. for fear that happened.

389 Dô sprach gar zornlîche der münech Ilsân:
Then spoke wholly wrathfully the monk Ilsan:

'ir büezet mîne sünde, die ich hân getân.'
'you do-penance-for my sins, which I have done.'

daz gelobeten sie gelîche dem vürsten hôchgeborn,
that vowed they alike to-the prince high-born,

ir keiner ez widerrette, sie vorhten sînen zorn.
of-them none it gainsaid, they feared his anger.

Sie sprâchen: 'lieber herre, sît ir sît wider komen, 390
They spoke: 'dear lord, since you are back come,

sô hân wir iuwer sünde gar ûf uns genomen,
so have we your sins wholly upon us taken,

des vröuwet sich unser gemüete und ist uns allen liep.'
of-that rejoices itself our mind and is to-us all dear.'

hiemite endet sich daz Rôsengarten liet.]
here-with ends itself the Rose-Garden song.]